**EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State Party</th>
<th>KENYA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>State, Province or Region</td>
<td>COAST PROVINCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of Property</td>
<td>FORT JESUS, MOMBASA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographical coordinates to the nearest second</td>
<td>Located between Latitude 3° 55’ 4 S 10° and Longitude 39° 35’ 39° 45°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Textual description of the boundary (ies) of the nominated property</td>
<td>The Fort is situated on a knoll North East of Mombasa Island. It is bound by the Indian Ocean’s Tudor channel to the East. To the North it is bordered by Mombasa Club and the Mazrui Cemetery. On the West it borders the Old Law Courts and the Mombasa Municipal Council buildings. While to the South it is bordered by Swahili Cultural Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attach A4 (or “letter”) size Map</td>
<td>SEE PAGE 8 BELOW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justification Statement of Outstanding Universal Value</td>
<td>Fort Jesus, Mombasa in all respects is an outstanding example of the style of fortification developed in Europe and introduced by the Portuguese to Africa and to the East. Fort Jesus, Mombasa, the latest of the 16th Century fortress, illustrates a new style of a remarkable fortress that apart from being a meritorious work of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The fortification remains an unsurpassed exceptional example of the philosophical debate underlying the architectural theory of the High Renaissance. Its superior design was subsequently used to improve other forts in Africa.

Throughout its history, Fort Jesus, Mombasa has been at the centre of complex human relations that resulted from the quest for economic supremacy, political domination and the struggle against such domination.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa also represents a landmark of human spirit of courage and endurance during periods of uncertainty; a representation of not only human achievements but the past turbulence that has come to shape the present societies in the region. Its universal significance is further demonstrated by, the unsurpassed interest shown by the various powers in its control such as the Portuguese, the Turkish, the Omani Arabs, the Dutch, the British as well as the African (Swahili) and others.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria under which property is nominated (itemize criteria)</th>
<th>Fort Jesus, Mombasa is proposed to be inscribed in the World Heritage List as a Cultural Site under criteria ii and iv.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Criteria (ii)</strong> Exhibit an important interchange of human values, over a span of time or within a cultural area of the world, on developments in architecture or technology, monumental arts, town-planning or landscape design.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Criteria (iv)</strong></td>
<td>Be an outstanding example of a type of building, architectural or technological ensemble or landscape which illustrates significant stages in human history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Name and contact information of official local institution/agency** | The National Museums of Kenya  
P.O. Box 40658 - 00100,  
Nairobi, Kenya  
Tel: 254-20-3742161-4/254-20-3742131-4  
Fax: 254-20-3741424  
Email: dgnmk@museums.or.ke  
Web site: www.museums.or.ke |
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. **IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY** ................................................................. 7

   1.a Country (and State Party if different) .................................................. 7
   1.b State, Province or Region ................................................................. 7
   1.c Name of Property ................................................................................. 7
   1.d Geographical coordinates ................................................................. 7
   1.e Maps and plans, showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone ................................................................. 9
   1.f Area of nominated property (ha) and proposed buffer zone (ha) ................. 11

2. **DESCRIPTION** ................................................................................................. 13

   2.a. Description of Property ........................................................................ 13
   2.b History and Development ..................................................................... 16

3. **JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION** ................................................................. 26

   3.a. Criteria under which inscription is proposed (and justification for inscription under these criteria) ................................................................. 27
   3.b. Proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value ................................. 28
3.c. Comparative analysis (including state of conservation of similar properties) ....29
3.d. Integrity and/or Authenticity
........................................................................................................................................................................34

4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE PROPERTY..........37

4.a Present state of conservation
........................................................................................................................................................................37
4.b Factors affecting the property
........................................................................................................................................................................38

5. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE PROPERTY
........................................................................39

5.a Ownership
........................................................................................................................................................................39
5.b Protective designation
........................................................................................................................................................................39
5.c Means of implanting protective measures
.................................................................................................................................40
5.d Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located
........................................................................................................................................................................40
5.e Property management plan or other management system
........................................................................41
5.f Sources and levels of finance
........................................................................................................................................................................41
5.g Sources of expertise and training in conservation and management techniques
........................................................................................................................................................................41
5.h Visitor facilities and statistics
........................................................................................................................................................................42
5.i. Policies and programmes related to the presentation and promotion of the property

5.j. Staffing levels (professional, technical, maintenance)

6. MONITORING

6.a. Key indicators for measuring state of conservation

6.b. Administrative arrangements for monitoring property

6.c. Results of previous reporting exercises

7. DOCUMENTATION

7.a. Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials

7.b. Texts relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans

7.c. Form and date of most recent records or inventory of property

7.d. Address where inventory, records and archives are

7.e. Bibliography
8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF RESPONSIBLE AUTHORITIES .......................... 54

8.a. Preparer ....................................................................................................................... 54
8.b. Official Local Institution/Agency .............................................................................. 55
8.c. Other Local Institutions .......................................................................................... 55
8.d. Official Web address ................................................................................................. 56

9. SIGNATURE OF BEHALF OF THE STATE PARTY ............................................. 57

10. APPENDIXES ............................................................................................................. 58

Appendix 1. Management plan ....................................................................................... 58

Appendix 2. Legal texts .................................................................................................. 67

Appendix 3. Photographs .............................................................................................. 69

Appendix 4. Site Maps (separate sheets) ......................................................................
FORT JESUS, MOMBASA, (KENYA)
Nomination Dossier for Inscription on the World Heritage List

1. IDENTIFICATION OF PROPERTY

1. a. Country

Republic of Kenya

1. b. State, Province or Region

Coast Province

1. c. Name of Property

Fort Jesus, Mombasa

1. d. Geographical coordinates to the nearest second

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is located between Latitude 3° 55’ 4’’ S 10’’ and Longitude 39° 35’’ 39° 45’’. 
Figure 1. Map of Kenya showing position of Mombasa
1.e. Plan and Map showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone

Figure 2. Plan of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
Figure 3. Map of Fort Jesus, Mombasa and the Buffer Zone
1. f. Area of nominated property (ha.) and proposed buffer zone (ha.)

**Area of nominated property:** 2.36 Hectares

**Buffer zone** 31 Hectares

**Total** 33.36 Hectares
Figure 4. Artist engravings of Fort Jesus and Mombasa Island in 1872
Figure 5. Ground Plan of Fort Jesus, Mombasa

**LEGEND**

A. Briefing areas
B. Passage of the archers
C. Ammunition store
D. Remains of Captain's house
E. Prison cells for women
F. Mazuri Hall
G. High wall
H. Gun Platform
I. Masked holes
J. Battlement holes
K. Entrance to the old harbour
L. Portuguese wreck
M. Sea
N. Bastion of St. Mategs
O. Watch tower over the harbour and entrance
P. Portuguese flag post
Q. Prison Kitchen (now provision shop)
R. Portuguese wall paintings
S. Site Museum (formerly barracks)
T. Remains of Portuguese chapel
U. Portuguese water cistern
V. 0 mani Arab's Well
W. B barracks Stores
X. Parapet Wall
Y. Portuguese Pit Latrine
Z. Remains of Portuguese skeleton

→ Tourist trail

AA. 0 mani Arab House (upstairs)
AB. Model of British Trolley and track
AC. Remains of Portuguese soldiers Barracks
AD. 0 Id gunpowder store (upstairs)
BB. Arabs flag post
BC. Portuguese open Court
BD. Friends of Fort Jesus office (formerly used by Cavalier San Antonio)
CC. Curator's house
CD. Ticket office
DD. Inner gate (upstairs Education office)
DE. Administration office
DF. Small drinks shop (upstairs)
DG. Café
DH. Curator's office
EE. Kitchen
EF. Storage
EG. Rooms
EH. Maintenance section
FF. Storage
FG. Main gate
FH. Toilets (formerly part of barracks)
GG. Lawn
GH. Restricted area
GI. Parking lot
GJ. Monument
HH. Shed
HL. Drains
HJ. Footpath
HK. Football field
HL. Magazine cavalier (below)
2. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY

2. a Description of Property
Fort Jesus, Mombasa is located in the city of Mombasa on the east coast of Kenya. Mombasa is one of the oldest port cities on the coast of East Africa and was re-knowned for its beautiful architecture as recorded by the great Arab traveller Ibn Battuta in 1331 A.D. Located in middle of the western Indian sea coast, Mombasa occupied a strategic location as trade and military matters were concerned in the western Indian Ocean. It became a major trade port used by traders from Asia, Arabia and the East in exotic and other goods. Mombasa therefore attracted the attention of powers that wanted to have a share of the Indian Ocean trade and the Portuguese were not an exception. To control this part of the world and the trade routes to Asia, they decided to build a fort in Mombasa.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa, was designed by an Italian architect and engineer Giovanni Battista Cairati (Joao Baptista Cairato), who was a leading military architect of the day and a protégé of King Philip II of Spain. Designed in a human form that is regarded as the most perfect of God’s creations the fortress had to aim at a similar functional and formal perfection. This reasoning was characteristic of the Renaissance and was a base of the architectural theory of the age.

The plan of the Fort consists of a central court with bastions in the four corners and a rectangular gun platform facing the sea. It was designed in such a way that it was virtually impregnable during any siege and it included basic facilities such as chapel, cistern, well and Captain’s house all covering an area of two acres. All these except the cistern and the L-shaped building in S. Matias were destroyed in the course of the 18th Century and are now survived by ruins. The Fort has one main gate and two other passages facing the sea. Other features include parapet walks, firing steps, watchtowers and gun ports. There were barrack rooms on the north and south sides and guardrooms leading back from the main gate. The re-entrant angles of the two landward bastions in which cannons were placed to sweep the face of the opposite bastion stand out clearly.

The flanks of the landward bastions, S. Filipe (north) and S. Alberto (south), are made with deep re-entrant angles where they face each other to
provide screened gun positions. The other flanks and the landward flanks of the seaward bastions, S. Matias (north) and S. Mateus (south) are square without re-entrant angles. The flanks of these bastions, S. Matias and S. Mateus are swept back to provide the widest possible field of the gunfire. The north and south faces of the rectangular projection are covered by the seaward bastions, but the main face, the east wall, was protected only by the guns of the outwork in front of it.

The Main Gate is in the lee of S. Matias, covered by the eastern flank of S. Filipe, and was reached by a wooden gangway (now filled with sand to create a bridge) across the ditch. Above it is the gatehouse, consisting of an upper and lower room. There were two subsidiary gates in the east wall of the projection (one is now blocked), reached from the central court by a sloping passage of the Arches and by a flight of the steps (the Passage of the Steps) and a third in the eastern wall of S. Mateus (which is also blocked). The purpose of the subsidiary gates was to provide access to the Fort for supplies landed by sea, and also to communicate with the outwork below the front of the projection.

The original defence on the landward sides consists of a 4.27 metres thick wall, comprising a parapet nearly 2.75 metres wide and 1 metre high, backed by a parapet walk and firing step. Later, walls were built on top of the old parapets so that the height was increased by 3 metres. The lower parts of the defences are made of solid coral cut back to the line of the walls, but more pronounced on the western side.

A dry moat surrounds three sides of the Fort which was necessitated by the dangerously rising slope of the ground beyond S. Filipe and S. Alberto. The height of the scarp is about 17 metres including the moat which is about 5 metres deep and 5 metres wide and surrounds the fortress on the landward sides. Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a good deal above sea level and the dry moat has its advantages such as allowing greater protection during a retreat.

The original materials used in the construction of the Fort are coral, lime, sand and clay. The facades have been finished with a pigmented yellow ochre plaster. The Fort has managed to retain much of its features since its construction in the 16th century.
**Cannons**

There are sixty three cannons found inside and outside the fort, they are of different types and origin. There are also many cannon balls which were discovered in and around the fort, among them are 2,659 solid cannon balls, 50 hollow cannon balls and 54 stone cannon balls. The oldest cannon is a bronze swivel gun dating back to 1677 that was found in the Portuguese wreck of Santo Antonio de Tanna, a 42 gun frigate which was bombarded and sunk by the Omani Arabs just at the entrance to old Port in 1698. The wreck excavation was done from 1977 to 1980. There are also some Scottish guns called carronades and nicknamed the “smashers”. The carronades were invented in Scotland in 1759 and were manufactured by a company called Carron Works. Hence the name carronades is derived from this company name. The British also used the carronades in their navy from 1779 i.e. 20 years after their invention, for short range battering of ships and buildings. Carronades were mostly ship guns. Later they were used in fort defence as anti-personnel weapons, for which purpose they were loaded with a ‘grape shot’ or a ‘canister shot’. There are also some cannons from other European countries. There is one Swedish cannon invented in 1752. Other cannons lined up outside the museum date back to 1802 to 1812. There are also two big cannons outside Fort Jesus. The Koenigsburg Gun and the Pegasus Gun. The former was German cannon and the later British cannon and were both used during the First World War (1915-1918).
Recent use of the Fort
During the colonial period the Fort was converted into an administrative centre and later into prison. Additional buildings to serve this purpose were constructed inside the fort. These included the kitchen and a hangman’s drop that was made against the re-entrant angle. Later a site museum, Conservation laboratory and an administration block were built on the old foundations of the barracks on the south eastern side of the central courtyard while on the north western part of the courtyard an ablution block was added.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa was officially opened to the public in 1960 and is currently both a Monument and Museum, attracting hundreds of thousands of both local and foreign tourists annually. It also serves as the Regional Headquarters for coastal museums and sites. In addition it is a popular site for social functions such as, wedding ceremonies, meetings, festivals and is host to a sound and light show. Further, the immediate surroundings of the fort are used by the Mombasa community for
relaxation, sport, formal and informal trade. The moat is currently used as a car/bus parking area for visitors to the Fort.

2. b. History and Development

![Figure 7. Entrance to Fort Jesus, Mombasa and view across the Tudor Channel in 1800s](image)

The East African Coast between Somalia and Mozambique has for centuries been inhabited by people of various backgrounds. Most of the Bantu speaking groups arrived in the area between A.D. 500 and 800 having come from the south. By about A.D. 1000, they had been joined by Arabs who came from Asia to settle along the coastal areas of East Africa. Independent city states such as Lamu, Mombasa, Malindi, Pemba, Kilwa and Zanzibar flourished along the coast. These Coastal settlements traded in gold, silk, ivory and skins with traders from as far as Persia, Arabia, Syria, India and even China. Some of the settlements grew more powerful than others.

The difference in wealth, and the resultant competition for control of the trade led to rivalries and even wars. For a long time Kilwa was the most important and most prosperous settlement on the coast. However, by 1490, its prosperity had begun to decline and was slowly giving way to Mombasa. Mombasa was founded about the same time with a rival settlement of Malindi, further north and prosperity of Mombasa brought fierce rivalries between it and city states including Malindi, Lamu and Pate.
Building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa

From the first half of the 2\textsuperscript{nd} Millennium, A.D. the Portuguese had developed navigational facilities that would take them to the world’s high seas. Portugal, which had been interested in finding a sea route to the East Indies, made the first successful attempt at the end of the 15\textsuperscript{th} Century. A Portuguese sailor, Vasco da Gama passed through the Cape of Good Hope in 1497, reaching India in 1498. En route he passed through a number of ports and towns in Mozambique, Tanzania, Kenya and Somalia. Vasco da Gama, found most of these towns divided. He, however, noted their prosperous and commercial life; good harbours where merchant ships to India could refuel. During this first journey, he was received with mixed reactions with some ports welcoming him and others not. For instance, while Mombasa was hostile towards the Portuguese, Malindi on the other hand welcomed them and became their initial base on the East African coast.

Before the coming of the Portuguese however, a number of foreigners had entrenched themselves at the coast and were actively involved with the local people in the trans-Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese had to break into the market and compete with these already established groups such as the Oman Arabs. This involved confrontations and ruthless takeovers of towns such as Mombasa and Kilwa that offered open resentment and unwillingness to pay tribute to Portugal. By 1509, the Portuguese had managed to take control of the area between Sofala, in Mozambique in the south and Socrata in the northern part of the East African coast.

In 1585, Turkey began taking interest on the coast, plundering and forcing various settlements to come under her control. Ali Bey, a Turkish pirate built a fort in Mombasa facing the Indian Ocean, and called it Ras Serani and began conspiring with the local people to drive the Portuguese out of Mombasa.

In order to consolidate their hold on the coast, the Portuguese Captain to the Coast, Mateus Mendes de Vasconcelos, then based at Malindi, was instructed to take his fleet to Mombasa and build a fortress. Initially Portuguese recaptured Ras Serani Fort rehabilitated it and renamed it Fort St. Joseph but this was not strategically positioned in relation to the
harbour. Therefore in 1593, the Portuguese began to build a fortress in Mombasa at its present location that was to be called Fort Jesus, Mombasa. Fort Jesus, Mombasa became the new Portuguese Headquarters on the East African Coast and had a permanent garrison of a hundred soldiers. Other supporting forts of less magnitude were built on the island of Mombasa. Ruins of some of them are still visible around Mama Ngina Drive Heritage Site located about 1.5 kilometres south of the Fort and Makupa 3 kilometres to the west.

The building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa attracted Portuguese settlers and traders in large numbers never witnessed before in the region. Fort Jesus, Mombasa therefore bears testimony to the first successful attempt by Western civilization to stamp its authority on an area that had remained under trade influence of the East over several millennia. Towards the end of the 16th century English and Dutch joined the competition for control of the Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese with limited men and ships began to find it impossible to keep a check on their Arab and Turkish enemies while at the same time having to watch for rival English and Dutch ships.

Taking advantage of declining Portuguese control, the Omani Arabs began to raid the Portuguese possessions on the East African Coast, beginning in 1652. By 1678, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was the only remaining stronghold of Portuguese power on the northern part of the East African Coast. The Portuguese were finally expelled from the fort, in December 1698 by the Omanis after a 33-month siege. The siege is known in history as the most remarkable event during the long Portuguese occupation of the East African Coast displaying the bravery of the Captain and his men during many months of bombardment, hunger and plague. Despite repeated attempts to recapture it, it was not until 1728 that the Portuguese managed to re-occupy it but only for 18 months.

The defeat of the Portuguese left the Omani Arabs in charge of the coastal settlements until the area was colonized by the British in 1885. Once under British rule, the fort was used as a prison until 1958 when it was declared a National Park, subsequently becoming a national monument and a museum. It still serves this function to date.
Name Fort Jesus, Mombasa
The Fort owes its name to the history of religious rivalry between the Christians and Muslims in Europe. During the 14th and 15th centuries Europe was devastated by war and schism that divided the states at that time. Social unrest was so rife that the Turks and Arabs took advantage of the situation to advance their religion in the Mediterranean regions of Africa and Europe. On seeing the whole Christianity under threat, the King of Portugal Dom Henry conceived a plan of action that would avoid further attacks from Muslims. He therefore instituted a new military order- the Order of Christ, to fight against the Moors (Muslims). Christianity was now enshrined in the structure of the state; it was the responsibility of the Kings to enforce the Christian faith upon the people through state machinery. When the Portuguese arrived in Mombasa, they encountered the Arabs and this was reminiscent of the Muslim domination back at home. They believed the only way to counter Muslim domination and any other threat from non-Christian quarters was by enforcing the Military Order of Christ. Consequently, after the Turks attacked the Portuguese at Mombasa in 1585, Viceroy Matias de Albuquerque of Goa ordered Captain Mateus Mendes de Vasconcelos to construct a Fort and call it Jesus of Mombasa.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa and Mombasa Old Town
Fort Jesus, Mombasa and Mombasa Old Town are interrelated but each has its own distinct history. The Fort was built at a strategic location to protect the town from seaward attackers. Historical accounts of Old Town before the construction of Fort Jesus, Mombasa describe the Mombasa Old Town as being characterised by lofty and old houses along narrow streets inhabited by African populations. The Fort was built at the beginning of two long and narrow streets known as Ndia Kuu and Mbarak Hinawy. One street connects the Fort to the port and another continues to the end of the Old Town.

The relationship of the Fort and the Old Town in terms of town planning has largely remained unchanged to this date. The Fort has been a significant symbol of the interchange of cultural values and influences between the African and western civilisations which are still visible in Mombasa Old Town today.

Construction Phases
Phase I: 1593
The actual construction of the original Fort started in 1593.

Phase II: 1634-1639
As a result of a revolt in 1631, recommendations for new works on the Fort were made in Goa in April 1633. The following improvements were made in the period between 1634 and 1639; curtain walls were made on the landward side without gun-ports, except in the north wall facing the town. The gaps between S. Alberto and S. Filipe and the west curtain wall were filled with a heavy roll-moulding made to screen the junction of wall and the coral face. The floors of the three bastions of S. Alberto, S. Filipe and S. Matias were raised with a filling of coral chips and red earth of the level of the old parapets, and new walls with 1.22 metres wide gun-ports were built on top of them in S. Alberto and S. Matias.

The west face of S. Matias was extended in the form of an elliptical bastion. An outer gate which led to the older gate by a covered passage way was made between the extension and the northern curtain walls, S. Mateus bastion was protected on the seaward side by a 3.96 metres wide gun-platform. Another platform was built on the landward side with two gun-ports covering the east face of S. Alberto and the south curtain wall. Angel towers were built at the junction of the rectangular projection and the seaward bastions. The approach to the Main gate was commanded by two gun-ports in the east face of S. Filipe. Two cavaliers were constructed in the landward bastions to cover the approaches from Kilindini and from Makupa, the ford of the Zimba.

Phase III: The Fort after the Great Siege of 1696-1698
During the great siege of 1696 the Captain’s house was badly damaged and when the Oman Arabs took over the Fort they undertook various works. The area occupied by the outer rooms was filled to the level of the top of the Portuguese walls to make a broad platform, protected by musket slits and gun ports. The door leading through a guardroom to the main court was blocked.

Captains of the Fort
All captains of the Fort operated under authority of the Viceroy and Governor of Goa. Below is a list of the captains posted to Fort Jesus by Portuguese authorities over the years.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Captain</th>
<th>Years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mateus Mendes de Vasconcelos</td>
<td>1593 – 1596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>António Godinho de Andrade</td>
<td>1596 – 1598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rui Soares de Mello</td>
<td>1598 - 1601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantino Castanho</td>
<td>1601 – 1603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jorge Barreto</td>
<td>1603 - 1606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaspar Pareira</td>
<td>1606 - 1608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedro Gomes de Abreu</td>
<td>1609 - 1610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manuel de Mello Pereira</td>
<td>1610 – 1614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simão de Mello Pereira</td>
<td>1614 – 1620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francisco de Sousa Pereira</td>
<td>1620 – 1625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>João Pereira Semedo</td>
<td>1624 – 1626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marcel de Macedo</td>
<td>1626 – 1629</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedro Leitão de Gamboa</td>
<td>1629 – 1631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loss of the Fort (The Chingulia Revolt)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedro Rodrigues Botelho</td>
<td>1632 – 1635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francisco de Seixas Cabreira</td>
<td>1635 – 1639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manuel de Sousa Coutinho</td>
<td>1643 – 1646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diogo de Barros da Silva</td>
<td>1646 – 1648</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>António da Silva de Menezes</td>
<td>1648 – 1651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francisco de Seixas Cabreira (second term)</td>
<td>1651 – 1653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joseph Botello da Silva</td>
<td>1658 – 1663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manuel de Campos</td>
<td>1663 – 1667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>João Santos Cota</td>
<td>1667 – 1670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joseph Homem da Costa</td>
<td>1671 – 1673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manuel de Campos Mergulhão</td>
<td>1673 – 1676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francisco Morais de Faria</td>
<td>1676 – 1679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manuel Texeira Franco</td>
<td>1679 – 1680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedro Taveira Henriques</td>
<td>1681 – 1682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonardo da Costa</td>
<td>1682 – 1686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>João Antunes Portugal</td>
<td>1686 – 1688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duarte Figueiredo de Mello</td>
<td>1688 – 1693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pascoal de Abreu Sarmento</td>
<td>1693 – 1694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>João Rodrigues Leão</td>
<td>1694 – 1696</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>António Mogo de Mello</td>
<td>1696 – 1697</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sheikh Daud of Faza 1697
Leonardo Barbosa Soutomaior 1698 (never took up the appointment as the Portuguese were defeated in the great siege)

Sheikh Daud of Faza was a young sheikh to who Antonio Mogo de Mello entrusted the fort and two Portuguese children knowing that he would not live long. De Mello died four days later and was buried in the church. Sheikh Daud went to Goa with the two children soon after.

Loss of the Fort to the Omani Arabs (Al Busaidy) after the great Siege
Alvaro Caetano de Mello e Castro 1728 - 1729

**Phase IV: The Fort as a Prison 1895 - 1958**
The original prison comprised the east end of the court including S.Matias and S. Mateus and the baraza. Other sections of the Fort were used as barracks for the security forces and temporary accommodation of the Provincial Medical Officer and other government officials. The 1954 plan of the Fort shows an extended prison. The long room on the south side of the court was made into a line cell of Asians prisoners while the Arab House was used as warders’ quarters and finally as the carpentry workshop. Another line of cells was built on the gun platform of the projection. The house on the top of the cavalier in S. Alberto became a store. A hangman’s drop was made against the re-entrant angle. The house on the cavalier of S. Filipe became the quarters of the chief warder and the prison office. The two houses in the projection were converted into the tailor’s workshop.

The open veranda on the 1899 plan was replaced with a washroom and lavatory at the north end and later converted into stores. The houses in S. Filipe and against the north curtain wall on the 1899 plan were cleared away and three cells created against the curtain. The rooms over the gate became warder’s quarters. In S. Matias the L-Shaped house was used as the night warder’s quarters and then as a juvenile prison. A flight of steps was built from the lower to the level of the bastion and here, a hospital, dispensary and latrine were constructed.

**Phase V: 1958 - Present**
In 1958 Fort Jesus, Mombasa was declared a historical monument by the colonial government of Kenya. Since then a number of studies and excavations have taken place to reconstruct the history of the Fort. In these excavations a number of artifacts including ceramics both local earthenware and imported ware from China, India, Persia, Portugal, England and other places in Europe and Asia, glass, coins and cannon and cannon balls were found. In the same year with funding from the Gulbenkian Calouste Foundation of Portugal restoration of Fort Jesus, Mombasa was restored as a historical monument and in 1960 a building to house a museum was built inside the Fort and the fort was opened to the public as a historic monument.

In 1976, three coronaries were moved to the battlements of the seaward projection and mounted in the gun points overlooking the harbour. Explanatory notices in English and Kiswahili (the local language) were placed near the guns giving an account of carriage and their uses, together with pictures of grape and canister shot such as might have been fired. External landscaping works at the entrance to the Fort were also undertaken. These works included concrete block paving of the entrance and construction of a protective “chain” fence.

In the same year a major underwater excavation in the shallows of Mombasa Harbour, below Fort Jesus, Mombasa to establish an identity of a wreck known to have existed, was sponsored by the Government of Kenya, the National Geographic Society, the Gulbenkian Foundation, the Institute of Nautical Archaeology and Western Maritime Museum of Australia.

Following another excavation with funding from the Omani Government one of the houses, now known as the Omani House on the Northwest corner of the Fort was restored, and a permanent exhibition with assemblage of artifacts depicting the culture and traditions of the Omani people was opened to the public. In 1992, the area in front of the museum within Fort Jesus, Mombasa was landscaped.

In 1993, Fort Jesus, Mombasa celebrated 400 years of existence. Donations from individuals both nationwide and worldwide made it possible to upgrade a number of areas in the Fort, including display and presentation
of the Fort as a historical monument and paved the path approach towards the entrance gate of the Fort. In 2000, the National Museums of Kenya with a grant from the Gulbenkian Foundation of Portugal restored the exterior ramparts of the Fort landscaped the surrounding moat so that tours around the Fort could be introduced for visitors to appreciate the massive walls structure and the relationship with their setting and also for installation of external lighting.

### Historical chronology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1498</td>
<td>Portuguese reach Mombasa, but sail on to Malindi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1589</td>
<td>Turks build a small fort at Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1593</td>
<td>Portuguese pull out of Malindi, begin to build Fort Jesus, Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1631</td>
<td>Sultan of Mombasa stabs Portuguese captain, takes over the Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1632</td>
<td>Unsuccessful attempts by Portuguese to take over Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1632</td>
<td>Sultan’s nerve fails; he quits, Portuguese re-occupy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1661</td>
<td>Sultan of Oman sacks Mombasa, but fears to attack the Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1696</td>
<td>Sultan of Oman lays siege to the Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1697</td>
<td>Portuguese in the Fort die from starvation and plague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1698</td>
<td>Fort falls to Omani Arabs after 33 months siege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1728</td>
<td>Garrison mutinies against Arabs; Portuguese re-occupy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1729</td>
<td>Omani Arabs retake Fort; Portuguese leave the Fort for good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1741</td>
<td>Omani governor of the Fort, al-Mazrui, declares independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1746</td>
<td>Al-Mazrui murdered by Omani; his brother kills assassin &amp; becomes governor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1824</td>
<td>Al-Mazrui governor seeks and gets British protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1826</td>
<td>British protection withdrawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1828</td>
<td>Sultan of Oman &amp; Zanzibar (Seyyid Said) regains Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833</td>
<td>Al-Mazrui forces in Fort withstand bombardment by Sultan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1837</td>
<td>The last Al-Mazrui governor submits to Sultan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1875</td>
<td>Fort bombarded by British ships to quell mutiny by Al-Akida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1895</td>
<td>Fort used as a government prison up to 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1958</td>
<td>Fort gazetted a National Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>The Fort was opened to the public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td>Fort was gazetted as a National Monument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Fort Jesus, Mombasa celebrated 400 years anniversary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 8. Images of early activities on the shores of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
3. Justification for Inscription

Portuguese castles and forts have been in existence since the 12th and 13th century AD when Portugal, the oldest Nation/State in Europe, declared its independence from Castile and Leon. Historically, while in the rest of Northern Europe and England many of the castles were still being made of wood, the Portuguese castles and forts were already made of stone. With the advent of artillery, most of these sophisticated castles and forts became outdated very suddenly, so new fortifications were built from the 15th century on.

Low structures with large star-shape walls were built to deflect the canon fire and give better spots to counter-attack with cross-fire. These new castles and forts were not only built in Portugal but all along the Empire, like in Africa, Asia and South-America. Most of them are however now in ruins today.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is an outstanding example of this “new style” of fortification. Fort Jesus, Mombasa improved on the existing fortress design by employing two symmetrical bastions to protect each other and hence provide the strongest continuous cross-fire for the very dangerous inland side. This was combined with a careful selection of the wall height so as not to exceed the range of the guns. The Fort’s forward bastions were bent to command as great an area as possible of the sea. It also had a defendable outer wall which also served to hide the interior buildings. Major part of the fort including the foundation was purely cut out of the existing coral rock and forms part of the natural landscape.

The fort had an advantage of a very deep moat that made the bastions look even bigger and making climbing attempts almost impossible. It is noteworthy that most Forts that did not benefit from this improved design as employed in Fort Jesus, Mombasa were destroyed such as Kilwa, in Tanzania and Makupa in Kenya.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is one of the best preserved and conserved Portuguese fortresses in Africa and which has had its general design unchanged throughout the various periods of occupation and use. The Fort therefore not only reflects the military architecture of the 16th century,
but is also an important historical landmark in the history of Mombasa, colonial history of Kenya, the entire Eastern Coast of Africa and the trans-Indian Ocean trade.

The Fort was used by various world powers as a stronghold to safeguard their interests along the East African coast. In this way Fort Jesus, Mombasa has outstanding universal value of being at the centre of the then emerging globalization. Given this long and enduring history, unique architectural design and deployment, Fort Jesus, Mombasa brings in unique and important fort features as well as an important historical development that came to shape the relations between the East and the West; it indeed also compliments other similar properties on the World Heritage List.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a significant symbol of the interchange of cultural values and influences between and among peoples, of African, Arab, Indian, Chinese and European origins, whose lives have been touched by the presence and role of this imposing structure. Fort Jesus, Mombasa like other Forts has been a place of contestation; however unlike many other Forts where contestation was usually between European powers, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was source of conflicts between diverse and desperate peoples and powers including Europeans, Arabs, Turks, and Africans among others. The Fort is a true symbol of human competitiveness; a representation of contestation, conflicts, challenges, wars, winning and losing and the notion of co-existence as respect for cultures as exemplified by the representative nature of the fort today. It is indeed a heritage of many cultures in one.

Very few forts represent and reflect the notion of human endurance and courage like Fort Jesus, Mombasa. Here, a Portuguese captain and a handful of fort defenders that included a few Portuguese and Africans defended the fort for 33 months in the 17th Century, during what has been referred to as the great siege. Under the Omani Arab siege, the fort was defended by these few people despite daily bombardment, hunger and siege. It is considered one of the most remarkable examples human endurance anywhere.
Fort Jesus, Mombasa represents the first successful attempt European power(s) to stamps its authority on the entire coast of the western Indian Ocean in an area that had hitherto remained the preserve of Asia and the East for millennia.

3. a. Criteria under which inscription is proposed (and justification for inscription under these criteria)

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is proposed to be inscribed in the World Heritage List as a Cultural Site under criteria (ii, iv).

(ii) The Fort marked a milestone in fortress architectural design during the 16th Century period as a stronghold of safeguarding the Portuguese interests not only on the East African coast, but also of controlling the trans-Indian Ocean trade. The successful development of Fort Jesus, Mombasa design led to some of its strategic aspects being used to improve other forts in Africa. Examples of such improved forts include St. Georges Castle-Elmina in Ghana and Fortaleza de S. Sebastião in Ilha de Mozambique. Fort Jesus, Mombasa also represents a symbol of struggle for freedom as later it became a ground of resistance to domination by any power. In the process many people died, while others were displaced, taken into custody or sent into exile. No or few Forts represent the spirit of resistance, courage and endurance as exemplified in the history of the Fort Jesus, Mombasa including during the great siege by the Omani Arabs. Currently Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a landmark of social cohesion given its continued use by people of diverse cultures but still retaining its characteristics of Fort or seat of power, military installation, prison and now a monument and museum.

(iv) Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the best surviving 16th century Portuguese military fortification in the world. The Fort design, which was the first of its kind, employed the use of a human form as represented by the various bastions and flanks. Renaissance architects associated the idea of geometrical perfection with the human body and this belief that in human proportions lies the harmony of “everything in the world” had for them an almost cosmic significance. No other fortress best illustrates the relationship to the human body more clearly than Fort Jesus, Mombasa. This layout as simple as it appeared ensured complete protection of the Fort. It provided
for the widest angle of firing range and cover against any incoming enemy attack.

3. b. Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is in all respects is an outstanding example of the style of fortification developed in Europe and introduced by the Portuguese to Africa and to the East. Fort Jesus, Mombasa, the latest of the 16th Century fortress, illustrates a new style of a remarkable fortress that apart from being a meritorious work of fortification remains an unsurpassed exceptional example of the philosophical debate underlying the architectural theory of the High Renaissance. Its superior design was subsequently used to improve other forts such as the St. Georges Castle - Elmina in Ghana and Fortaleza de S. Sebastiao in Mozambique. Throughout its history, the Fort has been at the centre of complex human relations that resulted from the quest for economic supremacy, political domination and the struggle against such domination. The control of the Fort meant automatic control of the entire East African coast, the Arabian Peninsula and the East.

The fort also represents a landmark of human spirit of courage and endurance during periods of uncertainty; a representation of not only human achievements but the past turbulence that has come to shape the present societies in the region. Its universal significance is further demonstrated by, the unsurpassed interest shown by the various powers in its control such as the Portuguese, the Turkish, the Omani Arabs, the Dutch, the British as well as the African (Swahili) and others. Today the Fort is a symbol of a common heritage of humanity with Europeans, Asians and Africans claiming a share of its history.

3 c. Comparative Analysis (including state of conservation of similar properties)

Fort Jesus, Mombasa, built to a highly original plan, has not suffered structural changes throughout the centuries. Although finished in the 17th Century it remains a remarkable product of 16th Century architectural theory. Its conception marks a high point of Renaissance thoughts. Fortified stations were in the past constructed by European countries to protect and
expand their trade and to exclude competitors. Portugal was one such country that led others in early fortification in Africa. The earliest European building in the tropics is Elmina Castle, built in 1482. Although the original fort was rebuilt in 1784 and 1847, the lay out of the buildings always remained basically the same. This can be said to be the prototype layout of fortified stations that were built elsewhere in the world.

The presence of the forts in Africa and perhaps in other lands led to European control of trade centres and expansion of empires. In some cases like in East and West Africa the forts were restricted to the administration of a few islands and indirect control of adjacent lands. The forts had been built only on the coast or beside navigable rivers. The interior was generally not conducive for settlement especially in East Africa due to the presence of hostile groups of people and fierce wildlife that roamed the impenetrable vegetation of coastal belt and the semi-arid inland.

There were three types of fortified trading stations used by European traders of the time, the distinction being made purely on the size of the building. The largest of these were called ‘castles’ intermediate ones ‘forts’ while the smallest were called ‘lodges’. The imposing features of the fort systems had a lot to do with the changing military needs and the responses by the architects of the time. In the late 15th Century Italian engineers used a new fortress design that showed greater promise in resisting bombardment and more efficient mounting of guns upon the defences. There are a number of forts that provide that and can be compared to Fort Jesus, Mombasa both in their similarities and differences.

**Elmina Castle, Ghana**

The Portuguese were the first Europeans to come to Ghana. They named the place they landed “Elmina” (from the Portuguese word mina, meaning a gold mine) and the country, the “Gold Coast,” because of the abundance of gold dusts they found on the land. Fort Sao Jorge da Mina (Elmina), which is a World Heritage Site, was the first European fort built in Ghana and indeed in Africa in 1482. The Castle was built under the supervision of the Portuguese Captain Diogo de Azambuja who was a leader of an expedition of 600 Portuguese soldiers. The fort became the
headquarters of the Portuguese in the Gold Coast from its foundations until the Dutch conquest in 1637.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa was built over 100 years later under the supervision of an Italian architect Batista Cairrati and exhibited a superior military architectural design which was used to improve other forts around the world including Elmina Castle itself and Fort S. Sebastiao, Mozambique. This is why the Portuguese were able to control from Fort Jesus, Mombasa the East African Coast and the Trans-Indian Ocean Trade for about 150 years.

Being the first of the Portuguese forts to be constructed, Elmina Castle set the pattern for subsequent Portuguese fort constructions, because the same requirements persisted. Elmina, like Fort Jesus, Mombasa occupied a promontory, the neck of which the constructors cut by a ditch. Entry was through a drawbridge, first to an outer fortified enclosure and then to a stronger inner ward. Each enclosure contained rooms backed against the fortifications and opening on a central courtyard.

Elmina like Fort Jesus, Mombasa was repeatedly conquered by various powers. For instance at various periods in the 1600s the Dutch repeatedly attacked the Castle. As a result of the bombardment very little of the early Portuguese castle at Elmina is now visible; the only portion which has remained intact is the cistern which dates from 1482 unlike Fort Jesus, Mombasa that remained intact despite the various bombardments. The layout of today’s castle at Elmina is the still well preserved Dutch Reformed Church, built at the end of the Dutch rule.

Thus Fort Jesus, Mombasa like Elmina Castle underwent bombardment but unlike Elmina Castle, it remained intact from the bombardment because it incorporated 15th century Italian advances in military architecture that enabled the fort to be built with stronger and thicker walls and had an efficient way of mounting guns. Both Elmina castle and Fort Jesus, Mombasa were built to ensure economic exploitation and military control by the Portuguese. While Elmina’s attention was focused to the interior of Africa for exploitation of resources of such like gold, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was built with an aim of controlling the east coast of Africa, the ocean lines of the Indian Ocean and the whole trade of the Indian Ocean including
the spice trade from the East. Both were founded as places of control, exploitation and domination.

**Fort James, Gambia**
Fort James, a fort inscribed on the World Heritage List, is located on river Gambia which serves as an important entry route to Africa’s interior from the Atlantic Ocean. Fort St. James was originally built by Baltic German servants for a company owned by the Duke of Courland (present day Latvia).

Fort St. James was constructed using different materials; for instance, the local sandstone material was used for fortification while other buildings within the fort such as the lodgings, barracks, storerooms, granaries and the church were built of wood and thatch. Fort Jesus, Mombasa on the other hand had two thirds of the exterior walls cut out of solid rock with the remaining being constructed of coral rag laid in lime mortar.

Like Fort Jesus, Mombasa Fort James witnessed several periods of turmoil in which it changed hands. For instance, in 1659 it was captured by a French Privateer but was recaptured by Courland in 1661 who then gave it to the English who later renamed it James II after the heir to the English throne. Again in 1692 the French naval squadron captured the island from the English and they altered the bastions. The English however, regained control in 1702 but again the French took control in 1704 to 1708 and made several modifications. After several battles, the Fort was restored in 1776 with the building of a new structure at the entrance that altered the design of the fort to a quadrilateral. This is in contrast to Fort Jesus, Mombasa which was able to withstand over 200 years of bombardment without any significant damage to the structure.
Fortaleza de S. Sebastiao - Mozambique

The entire Ilha de Mozambique Island including Fortaleza de S. Sebastiao is listed on the World Heritage List. The Portuguese faced constant threats from the Dutch and local kingdoms such as Macua and Ajaua and hence a decision to build the fortress was taken in 1545 and construction work began in 1558. It was still not completed when attacked by the Dutch in 1607, but was finished shortly afterwards in 1620. Fortaleza de S. Sebastiao has had to be restored several times due to bombardments and has also suffered from cyclone damage along the outwork. Fort Jesus, Mombasa on the other hand has not suffered significant damage that required restoration.

Of all the forts erected overseas by the Portuguese, the plan of Fortaleza de S. Sebastiao does have some similarities with Fort Jesus, Mombasa even if it is not so regular and shows a disregard of certain basic principles like keeping the curtain walls straight. With one exception, in Fortaleza de S. Sebastiao, the line of the curtain walls are broken up and the four bastions do not show preoccupation with symmetry. Indeed there are different. Also the plan of the Fort is not really rectangular but trapezoidal. Yet there is a vague resemblance in the general design and certain features are repeated.
Like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, this Fort, was, built by the Portuguese for control and domination of trade. The Portuguese however were also interested in the trade to the interior of this part of Africa such as gold from inland Zimbabwe. It therefore had a double function of securing routes to the interior of Africa and also the sea route to other parts of East Africa and Asia. In the end the building of this fort helped in entrenching the Portuguese position in this part of Africa and that, led to the colonisation and domination of what came to be known as Mozambique by the Portuguese for over 300 years.

**Kilwa Kisiwani, Tanzania**

Kilwa Kisiwani in Tanzania is a World Heritage Site. The Gereza Fort situated within the World Heritage Site was built on a little spit of land near the entrance to the harbour, covering an area of 109 square meters. Thus compared to Fort Jesus, Mombasa, it is a small construction. The construction material came from demolished houses that were built of coral rag set in lime mortar. A complete garrison of 150 people consisting of military officers and officials occupied the fort.

The fort just like Fort Jesus, Mombasa was built to protect the Portuguese interests on the island. Built in 1505 it was abandoned by the Portuguese in 1512 who destroyed much of the original fortress before they left the island.

The Gereza Fort like Fort Jesus, Mombasa got occupied by Omani Arabs who added some features like trillions to the top of the upper roof walls. Today however only a section of the original Portuguese fort remains and in the area north of Ilha de Mozambique, Fort Jesus, Mombasa remains the only icon of the original Portuguese architecture.

**Red Fort, India**

Red Fort also known as Delhi fort is a World Heritage site and was constructed by Emperor Shah Jahan in 1639 A.D. Although it’s a fort, unlike Fort Jesus, Mombasa it was built as a residence of the royal family. Red fort exhibits high level of art form and ornamental work while Fort Jesus, Mombasa is primarily an example of brilliant military Architecture. Fort Jesus, Mombasa brings further diversity to the list of forts in the World Heritage List and will immensely add value to Forts heritage of the World Heritage List.
Fort Aguada, India
There were a number of Portuguese forts in Goa, which was the main Portuguese outpost in Asia. Most of these, including Fort Aguada one of the best examples, now lie in ruins. Fort Aguada was located on a rocky headland and was the largest Portuguese bastion in Goa. Just like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, the Portuguese built this fort in 1612 to guard the northern shores of the Mandovi estuary from attacks by the Dutch and Maratha raiders. The name Aguada was derived from the presence of many fresh water springs which were a first source of drinking water for ships arriving in Goa after a long voyage. The fort has a four storey Portuguese lighthouse erected in 1864 and is the oldest of its kind in Asia.

Unlike these other forts, Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the only fort whose basic design and structure has remained the same despite changing hands several times. Fort Jesus, Mombasa was the base of control of a large area of East African Coast including the Arabian Peninsula and the Far East unlike other forts that were used to control small areas of less than 100 kilometres. There is however a common string running across all the forts discussed; they were by the sea or water body, were located in militarily strategic points, and were meant for control and defence. The Forts assisted in the exploitation of resources by both political and economic control by European powers over others at the time of the political power expansion and economic control and domination by the West. Some like Fort Jesus, Mombasa were, also great architectural feats.

3. d. Integrity and/or Authenticity
From archival and published records Fort Jesus, Mombasa today has remained true to its original architectural design. Fort Jesus, Mombasa retains its architectural and aesthetic values, as it was when it was built in the sixteenth century; for instance, the fort’s ramparts were cut out of solid coral rock and these have never changed. The moat around the fort that was used to defend the fort against land invasion is still intact. In addition the materials used for both the initial construction and subsequent developments and any repairs have conformed to the original materials used.
The use and function of the Fort, though not currently used as a military installation, has not deviated but has continued to respect the aesthetic form and value of the Fort. Modern uses of the Fort have necessitated the construction of structures that may not be of the original material but continue to respect the wholeness and form of the Fort. The same position and layout has been maintained and no developments have been allowed within the precincts of the Fort.

In order to preserve its archaeological and historical values and integrity, the Kenya Government declared the Fort a National Monument in 1958. To further enhance this integrity the Old Town which is part of Fort Jesus, Mombasa landscape and which is being proposed as a buffer zone, was declared a Conservation Area. A Department for Conservation of Mombasa Old Town, Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office (MOTCO), was established to monitor and control the Old Town’s development. These measures have ensured that the Fort is protected from effects of uncontrolled developments and neglect. By-laws specifically meant for the Old Town have been adopted by the Local Authority which will ensure the long term integrity of the historical landscape where Fort Jesus, Mombasa is located. These include; buildings not being allowed to be more than three storeys high which is the general skyline of the historical town; all buildings must retain the historical character and features inherent in them. Therefore all upcoming buildings or refurbishments are to retain the original door and window proportions and design to match the Old Town character.

The Fort as a heritage property open to the public acts as a learning centre and a place of reflection. Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a vibrant education facility to learn about the history of the Fort and the Western seaboard of the Indian Ocean. The local community and the general public also use the fort for various social functions while exhibitions are normally organized to showcase cultural heritage of the coast. These functions have served to enhance the social and economic values of the Fort. These uses however, do not in anyway interfere or undermine the physical fabric of the property. Both the integrity and authenticity of the fort is intact.
Figure 10: Present state of conservation of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
4. **State of Conservation & Factors affecting the Property**

4. a. **Present state of conservation**

The perimeter walls of the Fort are well preserved in their original state and height. The walls stand on a hard fossil coral rock reaching more than 17 metres above the ground. Two thirds of which is solid fossil rock in natural context. The inside of the Fort consisted of the barracks, church, Captains Offices and Residence, guardroom and munitions storage, all organized around the central courtyard. Most of the buildings that were built by the Portuguese inside the fort are survived by clear remains of wall foundations which are well documented. The buildings that are still standing were built later during the Omani occupation of the Fort. The Moat that surrounds the Fort is still in its original state making it difficult to access the fort except through the formal entrance. The management has landscaped it, provided seating benches and made trails around it as a visitor management strategy. The walls of the Fort are constantly affected by environmental degradation to which the management has kept regular monitoring and maintenance.

Currently, the Fort is in a very good state of conservation, and is maintained on a daily basis by National Museums of Kenya. Substantial conservation works were undertaken from December 2000 to March 2001. This included the re-plastering of the entire exterior walls, where the original plaster had fallen off. In addition to this, important works were implemented to improve on the surrounding landscape. All the informal craft shops were removed, the road to the water gate paved, and a garden planted along the sea. All these recent efforts have brought the Fort to a very good state of conservation, and only minimal maintenance and preventive conservation works are needed on regular basis.

The Fort like any other building located in similar environment is susceptible to environmental effects such as salinity and other natural elements. But solutions are well mastered, and the skilled craftsmen are available to mitigate these effects. The images below show the conservation state of the property.
4. b. Factors affecting the Property

(i) Development Pressures (e.g. encroachment, adaptation, agriculture, mining) There are no development pressures affecting the fort or its associated features. Being a National Monument and its buffer zone being a conservation area, there are no developmental pressures affecting the property.

(ii) Environmental Pressures (e.g. pollution, climate change, desertification) Global environmental changes have led to the increase in the sea level. Result of this has been that the tidal currents have started to undermine the coral that forms the base of the fort. With time this might affect the fabric of the building.

(iii) Natural disasters and risk preparedness (earthquakes, floods, fires, etc.)
   (a) Fires:

Figure 11. Moat of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
Fort Jesus, Mombasa has never experienced any fire disaster. The Fort however, is adequately prepared to deal with any fire disaster by having staff trained in fire fighting and having fire fighting equipments within the property.

(b) Flood
The Fort has adequate drainage system within and outside the property that guards it against any flood. But staff are also adequately trained to deal with any such eventuality.

(c) Earthquake
The property is located outside the known earthquake prone areas.

(iv) Visitor/Tourism pressures
The Kenya coast is the main tourist hub of the country; it is estimated that over 80% of tourists who visit Kenya come to the coast. Of these number 70% visit Fort Jesus, Mombasa. The National Museums of Kenya has put in place a visitor management system that distributes visitors to other heritage places within the coast as per their individual carrying capacities and this reduces visitor or tourist pressure on Fort Jesus, Mombasa.

(v) Number of inhabitants within the property and the buffer zone
- Estimated population located within the property is nil. The site is guarded 24 Hours per day by security staff employed by National Museums of Kenya.
- Mombasa Old Town which is the buffer zone of Fort Jesus, Mombasa has a population of 300,000 people (2009 projection)

5. Protection and Management of the Property

5. a. Ownership

The property is owned by the Government of Kenya through the National Museums of Kenya

5. b. Protective designation
Fort Jesus, Mombasa was first gazetted as a National Park under legal Notice No. 477 of 24th October, 1958. This legal notice was revoked when Fort Jesus, Mombasa was declared a monument under gazette notice No.1688 of 12th June, 1970. It was declared under the Preservation of Objects of Archaeological and Paleontological Interest Act Cap 215. Subsequently, the then preservation of objects of Archaeological and Paleontological Interest Act was revised and in its place came the Antiquities and Monuments Act Cap 215 of 1983. In 2006 this was repealed and replaced by the National Museums and Heritage Act 2006.

The proposed buffer zone of Mombasa Old Town was declared a conservation area under Gazette Notice No. 2092 of 11th May, 1990 and confirmed vide Gazette Notice number 1779 of 3rd May, 1991, under the Antiquities and Monument Act now replaced by the National Museums and Heritage Act 2006.

**By-laws**
The area is subjected to development control where:

- Buildings are not allowed to be more than three storeys high; this is the general skyline of the historical town
- All buildings must retain the historical character and features inherent in them. Therefore all upcoming buildings or refurbishment are to retain the original door and window proportions and design.
- Neon advertising signs are not allowed in the Old Town; instead advertisements are to be of hand carved timber boards.

**5. c. Means of implementing protective measures**
Once a site or building is gazetted as a National Monument no new developments or alterations can be done to the property without the approval of the National Museums of Kenya, who are the custodians of Kenya’s National cultural heritage. Because Fort Jesus, Mombasa is under the custodianship of the National Museums of Kenya, for any developments to be done the Site Manager has to first prepare renovation plans which are then reviewed internally and final permission granted by Head of the Department of Sites and Monuments. Moreover all developments within the buffer zone have to be approved by the National Museums of Kenya as per the prescribed by-laws.
5. d. Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located (e.g. regional or local plan, conservation plan, tourism development plan)

I. District Development Plan for Mombasa 2008 - 2012
As part of Vision 2030 government’s development strategy, the government has developed a 5 years medium term development plan for Mombasa district.

II. Conservation Plan of Mombasa Old Town 1990: Agency responsible is Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office (MOTCO) a department of the National Museums of Kenya charged with the management and conservation of Mombasa Old Town. The conservation plan lays the guidelines of the management and development of the gazetted conservation area of Mombasa Old Town.

The management plan lays down strategies to better conserve and manage the property.

IV. Interpretation/Visitor Management Plan, 2005, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum
This plan enhances interpretation of the fort and visitor movement within the property. All these documents are attached in section 7b.

5. e. Property management plan or other management system
A management plan was developed in 2001 for a 10 year period. Consultations with stakeholders are currently on going to develop a new one. A summary of the current plan is provided as an annex.

5. f. Sources and levels of finance
The government is assisting the National Museums of Kenya with the salaries of employees, while the organization is responsible for the maintenance of its museums. The administration of Fort Jesus, Mombasa takes care of the different ledgers through the accounts unit. Fort Jesus, Mombasa is allowed to use Kenya Shillings 800,000 (US$ 10,000) from entrance fees collected. This is used in vehicle maintenance and small works. This ceiling is however, regularly reviewed to meet inflation.
Other than the government grant, Fort Jesus, Mombasa also receives funds from other donor organizations for various conservation and research projects.

5. g. Sources of expertise and training in conservation and management techniques

As indicated above the main statutory authorities responsible for the management of Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the National Museums of Kenya. The National Museums of Kenya (NMK) person responsible for Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the Chief Curator who is assisted by the Departments of Sites and Monuments, Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office and Coastal Archaeology. These departments have a critical pool of professionals trained in management and conservation of heritage resources. Other than that Fort Jesus, Mombasa is also networked to various international organizations such Center for Heritage in Development in Africa (CHDA), ICCROM (AFRICA -2009), International Research Centre for Earthen Construction (CRETerre-ENSAG), AFRICOM, University of Western Cape and other cultural institutions that offer training in management and conservation of heritage resources.

5. h. Visitor facilities and statistics

In order to make visitor experience enjoyable, Fort Jesus, Mombasa has developed various facilities; these include and are not limited to the museum, brochures and guidebooks that assist in interpreting the property. There is also a gift shop that sells souvenir and other merchandise related to Fort Jesus, Mombasa. There is a cafeteria for visitor relaxation and adequate sanitary facilities. Fort Jesus, Mombasa also has wheel chairs and ramps for disabled visitors. Fort Jesus receives on average 200,000 visitors per year, mostly school children, students and regional and international tourists.

5. i. Policies and Programmes related to the presentation and promotion of the property

In 1958, the Fort was declared a National Park on account of its historical importance. The then colonial government realizing it’s educational and potential to attract visitors decided to develop the property for visitation
by the public. Major excavations within the inside of the Fort were carried out between 1958 and 1969 to recover archaeological materials for both study and interpretation. At the same time, as part of site development, a number of works were carried out. These included building a museum on the foundation of the collapsed Portuguese barracks. Once these works were completed the fort was opened to the public in 1962.

Presentation
The guiding principle in the interpretation and presentation of the Fort and its related military landscape is informed by the need to communicate the complexity of its history and to unravel the many layers of the historical events to the public. Its interpretative provision is meant to improve and enhance the visitor experience. As a consequence the human activity that created, sustained and continues to use the Fort is highlighted. Access to Fort Jesus, Mombasa is mainly by a terraced all weather-road connected to the rest of the road network of Mombasa town. Ample car parking space is available. An access bridge and paved way leading from the car park into the inside of the Fort is used both for deliveries and by visitors. Once inside, the visitor is first attended to from a ticket office adjacent to a cafeteria and not far away from the entrance, before being guided through the Fort. Self-guided tours are also allowed.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is presented as a whole (see ground plan for more details). The site display includes, the bastions, passage of the arches, ammunition store, barracks and chapel (now at ground level), Portuguese and British cannons and Portuguese paintings. A museum located within the Fort houses an exhibition of the artifacts recovered from the Fort and the various coastal areas of Kenya.

A soft drink shop and a craft shop are housed in the former prisons office and kitchen respectively. The drinks shop sells a variety of soft drinks whilst the craft shops sells souvenirs. The entrance to the Fort serves as the exit as well.

Interpretation
As observed by Michael Haynes (2001), the free leaflet gives a brief description of how the fort began its existence, and a list of key dates in its history; the guidebook provides a deeper knowledge about the site, and is
an attempt to describe various sections of the fort. Details concerning the salvage and conservation of the Santo Antonio de Tanna are also given. Information panels are provided situated on key parts of the Fort such as at the Main Gate giving a translation of Portuguese inscriptions and the Omani House both in English and Swahili translation. There are also two notices in the main entrance showing the chronology of the Fort.

Descriptive text notices are displayed in the seven key areas, they include:
Four cannonades in the East Wall, and the Museum arcade. There are two types of guides presently available at the Fort. One type of guide is brought in externally from the Fort, either hired from outside or brought in as a tour leader. The other type is available from the education office. There is also reconstruction within the Omani House, a receiving room the Sultan would receive his guests, complemented by displays of associated Omani artifacts within the house.

5. j. Staffing levels (Professional, Technical, Maintenance)

Fort Jesus, Mombasa has 104 employees who carry out various activities. Within these staff members there are seven professional and eleven technical staff whose expertise are in architecture, conservation, archaeology, museology and management. The other staff are engaged in maintenance of the Fort. Fort Jesus, Mombasa has also four Education officers who spearhead education programmes to schools and the general community.
Figure 12. Organogram of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
6. Monitoring

6. a. Key indicators for measuring state of conservation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Periodicity</th>
<th>Location of Records</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotten lintels due to infiltration of rainwater (This is due to oxidation)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decayed timber frames (this can be due either to dry or wet rot)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disintegration and erosion of wall plaster (this can be due to sub florescence or efflorescence)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molds and overgrowth on walls due to dampness (due to high humidity in the walls)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above indicators are used to arrive at quantitative measures that enable the museum staff to determine the state of conservation of the property and the appropriate mitigation measures that could be applied to address the problem.

6. b. Administrative arrangements for monitoring property

The Directorate of Museums Sites and Monuments, through the Department of Coastal Sites and Monuments is responsible for monitoring the condition of the property. The Department of Coastal Archaeology also monitors any archaeological material that may be found within the vicinity of the property and that may impact on the property. The relevant contact information is: Department of Coastal Sites and Monuments, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum, P.O. Box 82412 Mombasa, Telephone 254-41-2220081/2220058/2220077. Email: fortjesus@museums.or.ke or fortjmsa@swiftmombasa.com.

6. c. Results of previous reporting exercises

Since Fort Jesus, Mombasa has not been listed; there are no reports that have been made to comply with any international agreements and
programmes. Several reports however, have been made by the Department of Sites and Monuments to comply with local institutional requirements. These include:

7. **Documentation**

7. a. **Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials**

**IMAGE INVENTORY AND PHOTOGRAPH / AUDIOVISUAL AUTHORIZATION FORM**

1. I ....... **OKOKO ASHIKOYE**..... the undersigned, hereby grant free of charge to UNESCO the non-exclusive right for the legal term of copyright to reproduce and use in accordance with the terms of paragraph (2) of the present authorization throughout the world the photograph(s) and/or slides described in paragraph 4.

2. I understand that the photographs and slides described in paragraph 4 of the present authorization will be used by UNESCO to disseminate information on the sites protected under the World Heritage Convention in the following ways:
   a) UNESCO publications
   b) Co-editions with private publishing houses for World Heritage publications: a percentage of the profits will be given to the World Heritage Fund;
   c) Postcards to be sold at the sites protected under the World Heritage Convention through national parks services or antiquities (profits, if any, will be divided between the services in question and the World Heritage Fund);
   d) Slide series – to be sold to schools, libraries, other institutions and eventually at the sites (profit, if any, will go to the World Heritage Fund);
   e) Exhibitions etc.

3. I also understand that I shall be free to grant the same rights to any other eventual user but without any prejudice to the rights granted to UNESCO.
4. The list of photographs and slides for which the authorization is given is attached.

5. All photographs and slides will be duly credited. The photographer’s moral rights will be respected. Please indicate the exact wording to be used for the photographer’s credit.

6. I hereby declare and certify that I am duly authorized to grant the rights mentioned in paragraph 1 of the present authorization.

7. I hereby undertake to indemnify UNESCO and to hold it harmless of any responsibility, for any damages resulting from any violation of the certification mentioned under paragraph 6 of the present authorization.

8. Any differences or disputes which may arise from the exercise of the rights granted to UNESCO will be settled in a friendly way. Reference to courts or arbitrations is excluded.

Signed: ______________________

Date: __26th January 2009____
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID No.</th>
<th>Format (slide/print/video)</th>
<th>Caption</th>
<th>Date of Photo</th>
<th>Photographer/Director of the video</th>
<th>Contact details of copyright owner (Name, address, tel/fax, email)</th>
<th>Non exclusive cession of rights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Captain’s House</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com">fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Cistern</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com">fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>003</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Exhibition In the Fort museum</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com">fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>004</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort Jesus built on coral rock</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com">fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort Jesus and Mombasa Old Town</td>
<td>27-07-08</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com">fortjmsa@swiftmomba.com</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort gun Platform</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort main entrance</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort</td>
<td>05-10-03</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Contact Person</td>
<td>Email Address</td>
<td>Protective Designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Omani House</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort passage of the arches</td>
<td>30-01-06</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort passage of the steps</td>
<td>18-01-06</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Portuguese Canon</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>013</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Portuguese crown</td>
<td>31-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjmsa@swiftmombasa.com">fortjmsa@swiftmombasa.com</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>014</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Portuguese inscription</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>015</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>St. Mateus bastion</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.b. Texts relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans or documented management systems and extracts of other plans relevant to the property

1. National Museums and Heritage Act 2006 (Attached)
2. Fort Jesus, Mombasa Management Plan (Attached)

7. c. Form and date of most recent records or inventory of property


7. d. **Address where inventory, records and archives are held**

National Museums of Kenya
Museum Hill Road
P.O. Box 40658-00100
Nairobi
Kenya

National Museums of Kenya
Fort Jesus, Museum
P.O. Box 82412-80100
Mombasa
Kenya

National Archives and Documentation Centre
P.O. Box 49210-00100
Nairobi
Kenya
7. e. Bibliography


Axelson, E.  1960  Portuguese in South – East Africa, 1600-1700, Johannesburg


Freeman-Grenville, G. S. P. 1975 The East African Coast: Selected documents from the first to the earlier nineteenth century


Marjay, F.P. 1960 Henry the Navigator. E.N. Press, Lisbon


Were, G., Derek, A. W. and D.J. Parsons. 1984 East Africa through a thousand years. Evans Brothers Ltd Nairobi
8. Contact Information of responsible authorities

The Director General
National Museums of Kenya
P.O. Box 40658-00100
Nairobi
Tel: 254 20 3742161
Fax: 254 20 3741424
Email: dgmk@museums.or.ke

8. a. Preparer

Donatius Kamamba
Director, Department of Antiquities, Republic of Tanzania
P.O. Box 2280
Dares Salaam, Tanzania
Tel: 255-22-2116554
Fax: 255-22-2122840
E-mail: antiquities@omnisys.co.tz

Dr. Mzalendo Kibunjia
Director Museums, Sites & Monuments
National Museums of Kenya
P.O. Box 40658-00100
Nairobi, Kenya
Tel: 254-20-3741759
Fax: 254 -20-3741424
Email: mkibunjia@museums.or.ke; kibunjia@yahoo.com

Philip Jimbi Katana
Chief Curator, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum
National Museums of Kenya
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum
P.O. Box 82412-80100
Mombasa
Tel: 254-41-2220058
Email: jimbikatana@museums.or.ke

Kassim Omar Mwamba
Head, Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office
National Museums of Kenya  
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum  
P.O. Box 82412-80100  
Mombasa  
Tel: 254-41-2225906/2312246  
Email: kassim.omar@museums.or.ke

Ms. Esther Keige  
Legal Officer  
National Museums of Kenya  
P.O. Box 40658-00100  
Nairobi, Kenya  
Tel: 254-20-3742161  
Fax: 254 -20-3741424  
Email: ewairimu@museums.or.ke

Ibrahim Busolo  
Head, Coastal Archaeology  
National Museums of Kenya  
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum  
P.O. Box 82412-80100  
Mombasa  
Tel: 254-41-2220058  
Email: ibrahim.busolo@museums.or.ke  
Fax: 254-41-2220077

8. b. Official Local Institution/Agency
National Museums of Kenya  
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum  
P.O. Box 82412-80100  
Mombasa  
Tel: 254-41-2220058  
Email: fortjesus@museums.or.ke fortjmsa@swiftmombasa.com

8. c. Other Local Institutions
Coast Forest Conservation Unit  
P.O. Box 86-80400  
UKUNDA, Kenya
National Museums of Kenya
Malindi Museum
P.O. Box 939-80200
MALINDI

National Museums of Kenya
Gede Museum
P.O. Box 5067-80200
MALINDI, Kenya

National Museums of Kenya
Lamu Museum
P.O. Box 48-80500
LAMU, Kenya

8. d. Official Web Address
http://www.museums.or.ke
Contact Name: Philip Jimbi Katana
Email: jimbikatana@museums.or.ke, jimbikatana@yahoo.com
9. **Signature on behalf of the State Party**

It is my pleasure to submit the attached Nomination Dossier for inscription on the World Heritage List of:

‘FORT JESUS, MOMBASA’

The State Party has made every effort to comply with the rigorous information and documentation requirements of the ‘Operational Guidelines and hope the document will be duly accepted for evaluation by the Committee.

Signed:  ..........................................................  

Name:  ..........................................................  

Title:  ..........................................................

Organization:  .............................................

State Party:  ..............................................  

Date:  ..........................................................
Appendix 1. 2006 - 2010 Management Plan

a. Preamble

The following management was revised at the occasion of this nomination process, and is based on a management plan prepared in 2001 at the occasion of the 3rd AFRICA 2009 regional course on the conservation of immovable cultural heritage, held in Mombasa. This management plan has been formulated with the site stakeholders (see list of stakeholders at the beginning of this nomination dossier). In addition, this plan follows the ethics of the AFRICA 2009 programme, which are:

- to involve local communities in planning for and protecting heritage resources within their territory;
- to give priority to local knowledge systems, human resources, skills and materials;
- to ensure capacity building;
- to create a stable equilibrated base on which further sustainable development can be made;
- to give priority to simple, incremental solutions to problems, that can easily be implemented within an existing framework;
- to focus on prevention and maintenance as a cost effective and sustainable strategy for management and conservation;
- to ensure tangible benefits to local communities;
- to create awareness and respect for international conservation norms.

The following management plan should serve as a tool to ensure:

- partnership and optimal contribution by all parties in reaching the objectives of the plan
- the coherency of all activities developed at the site
- the best use of the available resources
- proper understanding of the factors threatening the site by all stakeholders
- continuity in the management in case of changes in management.

b. SWOT Analysis

b1. Strengths

Funding
- Generates forex
- Major
- Donor funding

Tourism
- One of the major tourist attractions in Mombasa
- Tourists delight
- 2nd most visited cultural site in Kenya
- Spectacular scenery
- Local public attraction
- Tour guides identify themselves with Fort Jesus, Mombasa

Promotion
- Strategic location
- Long opening hours throughout the year
- Easy accessibility
- Fort on the internet
- Time-to-time promotion undertaken
- Existence of Friends of Fort Jesus, Mombasa (e.g. newsletter)

Human Resource
- Human resource available
- Trained management staff available
- Competent human resource available

Site Management
- Site management structure in place
- NMK employs security persons
- Cleaning undertaken by Fort Jesus, Mombasa

Legislation
- Existence of protection acts of heritage (Cap 215, now Museums and Heritage Act of 2006)
- Declared National Monument – Double protection
Structure
- A durable structure
- Important landmark in Old Town
- Site is structurally sound
- Unique floor plan (shape)
- One of the few 16th c. Portuguese military architecture still surviving

Education and Research
- Fort Jesus, Mombasa is studied in schools throughout Kenya
- Existence of an educational department at Fort Jesus, Mombasa
- Site shared and linked to other Swahili Culture on the East Coast
- High number of student visitors
- Reservoir of knowledge on earlier European occupation in Africa
- Linkage with Old Town
- Historical significance

Site Presentation
- Existence of parking facilities
- Existence of tour guides
- Existence of educational department
- Sound and Light Show
- Availability of signages
- Existence of a museum at site

Social Environment
- Venue for social gathering

b2. Weaknesses

Funding
- Inadequate funds
- Part of general funds sustain other sites e.g. Jumba
- General money sustain other NMK activities

Tourism
- Tourist trail unclear
- Uncoordinated and un-informed tour guides (poor tour guide management)

Promotion
- Lack of marketing plan

Human Resource
- Limited creativity
- Limited staff motivation
- Conflicting and problematic management structure

**Site Management**
- Lack of assertive management from NMK
- Management plan unavailable
- Museum versus site museum identity
- Poor state of conservation (rusting, flaking)
- Museum visitors litter the Fort
- Inadequate security

**Legislation**
- Misuse of patent rights

**Structure**
- Insufficient drainage
- Poor drainage system
- Insufficient resources (e.g. transportation, fund set, etc.)
- Lack of teacher’s packages

**Site Presentation**
- Inadequate presentation and interpretation
- Not enough signage
- Monuments versus Museum-Presentation crisis
- Interpretation of site not properly co-ordinated
- Incompatibility of surroundings e.g. Mombasa Club

**Social Environment**
- No communication strategies between stakeholders

**b3. Opportunities**

**Funding**
- Co-ordination with Kenya Tourism Board (KTB)
- Co-ordination with Mombasa and Coast Tourism Association
- Co-ordination with Coast Development Authority
- Co-ordination with Friends of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
- Attraction of donor funding
- Potential for increased earnings
- Development/strengthening commercial activities around the site
- Proximity to CBD (Central Business District
- Good economical climate
Tourism
- Fort Jesus, Mombasa within tourist circuit
- Availability of local tourist market
- Increase in visitors (local and foreign)
- Co-operation with tour operators
- Availability of tourism training college
- Existence of tourist police unit
- Direct flights to Mombasa
- Good tourist infrastructure
- Willing tourist public
- Tour guides speak different foreign languages

Promotion
- Advertising through agencies e.g. hotels, brochures, etc.
- Inscription on the WHL
- Site internationally known
- Possibility of establishing marketing department
- Sound and Light Shows at Fort Jesus, Mombasa and advertised on international flights
- Negative publicity – crime, politics
- Tourist harassment by beach boys
- Increasing crime rate in parts of Kenya
- Risk of theft and vandalism

Human Resource
- Draw on in-house expertise
- Prospects offered by restructuring of NMK

Site Management
- Improve management strategies
- Potential to develop a social meeting point around the site (coffee drinking, etc.)
- Improve site management by localizing generated funds

Legislation
- Prospects offered by re-drafting of Museums and heritage Bill

Structure
- Prospects/chances to survive many years to come

Education and Research
- Prospects for increased school visits
- Re-enforcement of classroom message
- Research potentials
- Internship for scholars
- Museum re-enforce what is taught in schools
- Availability of traditional know-how

**Site Presentation**
- Upgrade and develop facilities (Customer care, etc)
- Proposal for site interpretation improvement available
- Activating the surrounding

**Social Environment**
- Good political will
- Friendly neighbourhood

Willingness of Old Town Community to get involved
- Old community for living culture

**b4. Threats**

**Funding**
- Conditions set by donors
- No diversification of earnings
- Declining Central Government funding

**Tourism**
- Low seasonal visitation (e.g. during rainy season)
- Competition from nearby tourist sites E.g. Zanzibar
- Decline of tourist industry
- Vandalism by tourists
- Unlicensed tour guides

**Promotion**
- Staff exodus
- Nepotism

**Human Resource**

**Site Management**
- Inappropriate conservation techniques
- Sprawling kiosk development
- Low participatory management by stakeholders

**Legislation**
- Possible rejection by Parliament
- “Fort Jesus, Mombasa as a name not patented
Structure
- Erosion of the site
- Climatic effects on building materials (humidity, sea moisture, wind, salty air)

Education and Research
- Lack of focus on educational programmes

Site Presentation
- Risk of too much commercialisation
- Low carrying capacity of the site

Social Environment
- Security of site (especially during night ceremonies)
- Vagrancy around the site

c. Key issues

The Key issues to be addressed at Fort Jesus, Mombasa in the near future are:

The management can be improved
A number of problems related to site management were observed during site visits, discussions with both staff and stakeholders. Outstanding in this respect was the unclear and sometimes cumbersome reporting mechanisms leading to long decision making procedures. In some situation, it was difficult to know who is supposed to make what decision. There was therefore, firstly, an urgent need to reform the structure so as to streamline operations.

The site also had been operating without a site management plan. Despite the recent conservation works on the walls of the fort, no maintenance plan has been drawn or implemented. As a result the site has once again begun to show signs of degradation. The second part of this objective therefore was to address site-planning issues.

Funding is not completely sustainable
Although the fort attracts substantial amounts of money annually, it has not been able to harness and exploit the various opportunities to earn more income. Income from the present level of visitorship, despite being
inadequate for overall conservation of the fort, is also used to sustain other sites along the coast.

The fort has high prospects of generating more income by way of increasing and diversifying its income base. Diversified activities could include selling of indigenous crafts and foodstuffs from within the fort. The museum has an option to hire out the cafeteria to an independent contractor so as to improve the quality of services. The sound and light show needs to be advertised and viewed by a larger audience than is currently the case. There is need to construct descent stalls for the vendors operating from within the museum premises and collect rent from such activities. Hawkers trading on museum grounds also should be levied. The fort also enjoys goodwill for donors.

**Presentation and Interpretation could be revised to improve the visitor's experience**

Though the fort is the second most visited site in Kenya, its presentation and interpretation is in dire need of improvement. The current presentation lacks a clear trail and hardly gives a visitor a full experience of fort life. In addition, the fort lacks in thematic presentations.

The fort is currently faced with the problem of museum visit. The current museum despite being located at the center of the trail also houses collections alien to the fort and whose interpretation does not fit in the story of the fort. Interpretation facilities are inadequate and the site does not have a visitor center. There will therefore be need to assess the presentation and interpretation needs of the site followed by preparation of a presentation and interpretation plan, which will have to be implemented in the medium term.

**The fort is well maintained but more preventive conservation works and monitoring is needed**

The site is generally in good condition, especially after the recent restoration works carried out on the exterior walls. Site pathological studies revealed that some areas of the fort including restored ones are fast degrading. There will, therefore, be need to urgently draw up rehabilitation and restoration plans that will address the problems
observed. A maintenance plan also needs to be drawn and implemented for regular maintenance of the site.

**Awareness and promotion are not sufficient**

Though the fort is a “must see site” for visitors to Mombasa, there is currently no marketing strategy by NMK. Many hotels lack information about the fort on their information desks. The site, however, is on internet and there are individual efforts by a number of operators to market the fort. These include those by the operators of the sound and light show. The fort also is affected by general downwards trends in the tourist market necessitated by negative publicity.

There will, therefore, be need to draw and implement a vigorous marketing strategy and to establish cooperative links with various tour operators and airlines for the purpose of attracting more visitors.

**e. 2006-2010 Action Plan**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular activities to be implemented</th>
<th>Short Term 2006-2007</th>
<th>Long Term 2008-2010</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Management                           | - Draw up a management plan  
- Re-structure Fort Jesus, Mombasa Management | - Evaluation and monitoring  
- Maintain highly motivated staff |
| Establish sustainable Funding system | - Set up a fund raising committee  
- Draw terms of reference  
- Prepare project proposals for funding  
- Increase income from a variety of sources i.e. shop and restaurant | - Increase and maintain donor funding |
<p>| Site Presentation and                |                     |                     |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interpretation</th>
<th>Conservation works</th>
<th>Tourism promotion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Carry out site presentation and interpretation needs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Draw site presentation and Interpretation plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Draw up a rehabilitation/restoration plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Prepare budget estimates for conservation work.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Establish links with tour agents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Draw up a marketing plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Set up a marketing committee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Set up a website</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Develop visitor facilities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Improve site interpretative signage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Layout tourist trails</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Regular inspection and maintenance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Continuous updating of a website</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Increase site publicity through continuous distribution of publicity materials and merchandise.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# KENYA GAZETTE SUPPLEMENT

## ACTS, 2006

NAIROBI, 8th September, 2006

## CONTENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Act</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The National Museums and Heritage Act, 2006</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE NATIONAL MUSEUMS AND HERITAGE ACT, 2006

No. 6 of 2006

Date of Assent: 23rd August, 2006

Date of Commencement: 8th September, 2006

ARRANGEMENT OF SECTIONS

PART I—PRELIMINARY

Section

1 — Short title.
2 — Interpretation.

PART II — ESTABLISHMENT, FUNCTIONS AND POWERS OF THE NATIONAL MUSEUMS OF KENYA

3 — Establishment of the national Museums of Kenya.
4 — Functions of National Museums.
5 — Powers of the National Museums.
6 — Board of Directors.
7 — Tenure of office.
8 — Termination of appointment of Chairman and members of the Board.
9 — Disclosure of interest by Chairman and members.
10 — Meetings of the Board.
11 — Delegation by the Board.
12 — Protection from personal liability.
13 — Liability of the Board in contract and tort.
14 — The Director-General.
15 — Staff
16 — Appointment of advisory committees.
17 — National Museums to undertake research etc.
PART III—FINANCIAL PROVISIONS

18—Funds of the National Museums.
19—Financial year.
20—Annual estimates.
21—Investment of funds.
22—Restriction on loans to Board members and staff.
23—Accounts and audit.
24—Annual report.

PART IV—HERITAGE DECLARATIONS

25—Declaration of monuments etc.
26—Registers.

PART V—SEARCHES AND DISCOVERIES

27—Exploration licences.
28—Conditions and forms of exploration licence.
29—Entry on land under exploration licence.
30—Notification of discovery.
31—Restriction on moving objects.
32—Offences.
PART VI—PROTECTED AREAS

33 — Where protected area is Trustland.
34 — Control of access etc. to protected area.
35 — Compensation to owner of land in protected area.
36 — Offences.

PART VII—MONUMENTS

37 — Inspection and repair of monuments.
38 — Acquisition of monuments and antiquities.
39 — Guardianship of monuments.
40 — Agreements for protection or preservation of monuments.
41 — Enforcement of agreements for protection of monuments.
42 — Compulsory purchase of monuments.
43 — Duties of Board to protect and maintain monuments.
44 — Power of National Museums to relinquish rights over monuments.
45 — Offences.

PART VIII—ANTIQUITIES AND PROTECTED OBJECTS

46 — Antiquities property of Government.
47 — Information concerning antiquities and protected objects.
48 — Prohibition of removal of antiquities and protected objects.
49 — Prohibition of sale etc. of antiquities and protected objects.
50 — Compulsory acquisition of antiquities and protected objects.
51 — Offences.

PART IX—EXPORT

52 — Conditions relating to export.
53 — Notices to Minister to acquire by compulsory purchase.
54 — Export through customs port of entry.
55 — Offences.

PART X—POWERS OF ENFORCEMENT

56 — Inspection by the National Museums.
57 — Heritage wardens.
58 — Power of heritage wardens to inspect.
59 — Power of arrest.
60 — Power of customs officers.
61 — Forfeiture to Government after seizure.
62 — Notices.
63 — Offences.

PART XI—GENERAL

64 — Burden of proof.
65 — Stamp duty exemption.
66 — Rules.
67 — Licensing of Museums.
68 — Regulations.
69 — Transitional provisions.
70 — Repeals

PART XII—MISCELLANEOUS

71 — Amendment to section 4 of Cap. 130.
72 — Amendment to section 145 of Cap. 265.
73 — Amendment to section 201 of Cap. 265.
74 — Amendment to section 7 of Cap. 306.
75 — Amendment to section 17 of Cap. 499.
76 — Amendment to section 47 of Act No. 6 of 1996.
77 — Amendment to section 38 of Act No. 8 of 1999.
78 — Amendment to section 116 of Cap. 280.
79 — Amendment to section 65 of Cap. 281.
80 — Amendment to section 172 of Cap. 282.
81 — Amendment to section 136 of Cap. 300.

SCHEDULES
An Act of Parliament to consolidate the law relating to national museums and heritage; to provide for the establishment, control, management and development of national museums and the identification, protection, conservation and transmission of the cultural and natural heritage of Kenya; to repeal the Antiquities and Monuments Act and the National Museums Act; and for connected purposes

ENACTED by the Parliament of Kenya as follows:-

PART I - PRELIMINARY

1. This Act may be cited as the National Museums and Heritage Act, 2006.

2. In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires—

“antiquity” means any movable object other than a book or document made in or imported into Kenya before the year 1895, or any human, faunal or floral remains of similar minimum age which may exist in Kenya;

“Board” means the National Museums Board established under section 6;

“cultural heritage” means —
(a) monuments;

(b) architectural works, works of monumental sculpture and painting, elements or structures of an archaeological nature, inscriptions, cave dwellings and combinations of features, which are of universal value from the point of view of history, art or science;

(c) groups of separate or connected buildings which, because of their architecture, their homogeneity or their place in the landscape, are of outstanding value from the point of view of history, art or science;

(d) works of humanity or the combined works of nature and humanity, and areas including archaeological sites which are of outstanding value from the historical, aesthetic, ethnological or anthropological point of view;

and includes objects of archaeological or palaeontological interest, objects of historical interest and protected objects;

“Director-General” means the Director-General of the National Museums appointed under section 14;
"exploration licence" means an exploration licence issued under section 27;

"export permit" means a permit to export a monument or part thereof, an antiquity, or a protected object, issued by the Minister under section 52;

"geo-park" means an area of natural heritage;

"heritage" means natural and cultural heritage;

"heritage warden" means a person appointed under section 57;

"maintenance" includes the fencing, covering in, repairing, restoring and cleansing of a monument or the fencing or covering of a protected area, and the doing of any act which may be necessary for the purpose of maintaining or protecting a monument or a protected area or of securing convenient access thereto;

"Minister" means the Minister for the time being responsible for the National Museums;

"monument" means –

(a) a place or immovable structure of any age which, being of historical, cultural, scientific, architectural, technological or other human
National Museums and Heritage

interest, has been and remains declared by the Minister under section 25(1)(b) to be a monument;

(b) a rock-painting, carving or inscription made on an immovable object;

(c) an ancient earthwork or other immovable object attributable to human activity;

(d) a structure which is of public interest by reason of the historic, architectural, traditional, artistic or archaeological interest attached to it; and has been and remains declared by the Minister under section 25(1)(b) to be a monument;

(e) a shipwreck more then fifty years old;

and such adjoining land as may be required for maintenance thereof;

"museum" means a public or private institution which collects, preserves, analyses and exhibit objects of cultural and natural heritage;

"national museum" means a museum vested in the National Museums;
"the National Museums" means the National Museums of Kenya established under section 3;

"natural heritage" means –

(a) natural features consisting of physical and biological formations or groups of such formations, which are of outstanding universal value from the aesthetic or scientific point of view;

(b) geological or physiographical formations of special significance, rarity or beauty;

(c) precisely delineated areas which constitute the habitat of threatened species of animals and plants of outstanding universal value from the point of view of science, conservation or natural beauty; or

(d) areas which are or have been of religious significance, use or veneration and which include but are not limited to Kayas;

"object of archaeological or palaentological interest" means an antiquity which was in existence before the year 1800;
“object of historical, cultural or scientific interest” means an object which came into existence in or after the year 1800;

“open space” means an open space not built upon in any urban or peri-urban area whether in a municipality or not to which the public has access and which may be used for parks, gardens, recreation grounds or any other use whatsoever;

“owner” includes a joint owner invested with powers of management on behalf of himself and other joint owners, and an agent or trustee exercising powers of management over a monument, and the successor in title of any such owner, the successor in office of any such agent or trustee; but nothing in this Act shall be deemed to extend the powers which may be lawfully exercised by the owner, agent or trustee;

“permit” means a valid and subsisting permit issued by the Minister under the provisions of this Act;

“private land” means land privately owned and land the subject of a grant, lease or licence from the Government, and includes Trust land;

“protected area” means a site which has been and remains declared by the Minister under section 25(1)(a) or (c) or (f) to be a protected area;
“protected building” means a building of special architectural or historical interest declared by the Minister to be a protected building under section 25(1)(e) and includes any object or structure fixed to the building;

“protected object” means –

(a) a door or door-frame carved in an African or Oriental style before the year 1946; or

(b) any other object or type of object, whether or not part of an immovable structure, which being of historical or cultural interest has been and remains declared by the Minister under section 25(1) (d) to be a protected object;

(2) This Act extends to heritage including monuments, antiquities and shipwrecks in lakes and waters within Kenya, or on the seabed within the territorial waters of Kenya.

PART II—ESTABLISHMENT, FUNCTIONS AND POWERS OF THE NATIONAL MUSEUMS OF KENYA

3. There is established a body corporate to be known as the National Museums of Kenya with perpetual succession and a common seal and which shall be capable in its corporate name of –
(a) suing and being sued;

(b) purchasing or otherwise acquiring, holding, charging and disposing of movable and immovable property;

(c) borrowing money;

(d) entering into contracts;

(e) doing or performing all other things or acts necessary for the proper performance of its functions under this Act which may lawfully be done or performed by a body corporate.

4. The National Museums shall -

(a) serve as national repositories for things of scientific, cultural, technological and human interest;

(b) serve as places where research and dissemination of knowledge in all fields of scientific, cultural, technological and human interest may be undertaken;
(c) identify, protect, conserve and transmit the cultural and natural heritage of Kenya; and

(d) promote cultural resources in the context of social and economic development.

S.1. The National Museums may:

(a) purchase or exchange, take on lease, or acquire by gift or otherwise, movable or immovable property including an existing museum, for any purpose of or connected with the national museums;

(b) sell, lease or exchange immovable property from time to time vested in the National Museums which is no longer, or not for the time being, required for any such purposes;

(c) erect, maintain and improve buildings, including staff quarters, to be used for any such purpose;

(d) mortgage or charge immovable property from time to time vested in the National Museums as security for repayment, with or without interest, of any money borrowed for the purposes of the National Museums;
(e) appoint advisory committees for museums;

(f) acquire by way of gift or purchase, or accept by way of loan or deposit, any object of scientific, cultural, technological, historical or human interest;

(g) exchange, sell or otherwise dispose of objects not required for the purpose of the National Museums and lend objects vested in the National Museums to any person or institution whether within or outside Kenya:

Provided that no object which is accessioned and registered as part of the collection of a national museum shall be—

(i) sold, given away, mortgaged, pledged or in anyway permanently disposed of save under authority of a resolution of the Board and with the consent in writing of the Minister; or

(ii) lent to any person or organization, within or outside Kenya, unless under authority of a resolution of the Board and with the consent of the Minister;
(h) with consent of the Minister form of application to take over or assist in any of the functions of the National Museums;

(i) apply money received on the disposal of movable property or by the way of gift or grant or otherwise for admission to a museum, purchase of any object which in the Board it is desirable to acquire for a national museum or in furthering and increasing the utility in a museum;

(j) solicit and accept and receive subscriptions, donations, devices and bequests (whether movable or immovable property and whether absolute or conditional) for the special purposes of a national museum subject to any trust;

(k) charge for admission to a national museum to any lecture, exhibit, conducted tour of instruction or other facility, or for publications, such fees or prices as the National Museums may, subject to regulations made under this Act, think fit.
(l) borrow, with or without security, such moneys as may from time to time be needed for any purposes of the National Museums;

(m) in consultation with the National Council for Science and Technology, maintain existing research institutions and establish new ones;

(n) subject to the provisions of the Environmental Management and Co-ordination Act, conduct environmental impact assessments;[No. 8 of 1999.]

(o) enter into association with other bodies or organizations within or outside Kenya as the Board may consider desirable or appropriate and in the furtherance of the purposes for which the National Museums is established;

(p) open a bank account or bank accounts for the funds of the National Museums;

(q) do all such other lawful things as may seem to the National Museums to be incidental or conducive to the attainment of any of the functions of the National Museums.

(2) The National Museums may receive moneys from any source and may apply those moneys to defray its expenses in carrying out the functions and exercising the
powers conferred on it by this Act including the reimbursement of expenses incurred by members of the Board in attending meetings of the Board.

6. (1) There is established a Board of Directors of the National Museums of Kenya which shall be the governing body of the National Museums and shall consist of the following members:

(a) a chairman appointed by the Minister after consultation with the President;

(b) four persons representing scientific interests appointed by the Minister of whom one shall be nominated by Nature Kenya, one by the University of Nairobi, one from one other university and one from the National Council for Science and Technology;

(c) the Permanent Secretary in the Ministry for the time being responsible for national heritage;

(d) the Permanent Secretary in the Ministry for the time being responsible for finance;

(e) the Permanent Secretary in the Ministry for the time being responsible for defence;
(f) not more that three persons to be appointed by the Minister by virtue of their outstanding interest in and contribution to the work of national museums;

(g) one person appointed by the Minister from the private sector;

(h) one person appointed by the Minister upon nomination by the Kenya Tourist Board;

(i) a Director-General appointed by the Minister after consultation with the Board who shall be an ex-officio member and secretary to the Board.

(2) The Board shall elect a vice-chairman from among its members.

(3) The Board shall have the general management, development and control of the National Museums and all functions vested in the National Museums by this Act.

7.(1) The Chairman or a member of the Board other than an ex-officio member shall hold office for a period of three years and shall be eligible for re-appointment.
(2) The quorum of the Board shall be seven members excluding the ex-officio members.

(3) The powers of the Board shall not be affected by any vacancy in the membership thereof.

(4) A member of the Board, other than an ex-officio member, may resign his office by notice in writing under his hand addressed to the Minister.

8. The appointment of the chairman or member of the Board may be terminated by the Minister, if the chairman or member –

(a) is unable to perform the functions of his office by reason of mental or physical infirmity;

(b) is adjudged bankrupt or enters into a composition scheme or arrangement with his creditors;

(c) is convicted of a criminal offence and sentenced to imprisonment for a term exceeding six months or to a fine exceeding ten thousand shillings;

(d) is, without reasonable cause, absent from three consecutive meetings of the Board; or
9.(1) The Chairman or a member of the Board who has a direct or indirect personal interest in a matter being considered or to be considered by the Board shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after the relevant facts concerning the matter have come to his knowledge, disclose the nature of his interest to the Board.

(2) A disclosure of interest made under subsection (1) shall be recorded in the minutes of the meeting of the Board and the chairman or member shall not take part in the consideration or discussion of or vote during any deliberations on the matter by the Board.

10.(1) The conduct and regulation of the business and affairs of the Board shall be as provided in the Schedule, but subject thereto, the Board may regulate its own procedure.

(2) The Board may co-opt any person to participate in its deliberations on any particular issue, but a person so co-opted shall have no right to vote at any meeting of the Board.

11. The Board may, by resolution generally or in
any particular case, delegate to any committee of the Board the exercise of any of the powers or the performance of any of the functions or duties of the Board under this Act.

12. Subject to section 13, no matter or thing done by a member of the Board or agent of the Board shall, if the matter or thing is done bona fide for executing the functions, powers and duties of the Board under this Act, render the member, or agent or any person acting on their directions personally liable to any action, claim or demand whatsoever.

13. The provisions of section 12 shall not relieve the Board of the liability in tort or contract, to pay compensation or damages to any person for any injury to him, his property or any of his interests caused by the exercise of any power conferred by this Act, or any other written law.

14. (1) There shall be a Director-General of the National Museums, who shall be appointed by the Minister on the recommendation of the Board on terms and conditions specified in the instrument of his appointment.

(2) The Director-General shall hold the minimum of a doctorate and have experience in any field or discipline relating to the work of the National Museums.

(3) The Director-General shall be the chief executive officer of the National Museums and shall be responsible to
the Board for the day to day management of the National Museums.

15. The Board may appoint such officers and staff as are necessary for the proper discharge of the functions of the National Museums under this Act upon such terms and conditions of service as the Board may determine.

16.(1) The National Museums may appoint a separate advisory committee for any national museum or group of national museums.

(2) An advisory committee may include at least one person nominated by the local authority in whose jurisdiction the national museum is situated.

(3) Except as otherwise provided by any regulations made under this Act, the National Museums may delegate to an advisory committee all or any of its powers and obligations under this Act in respect of the museums for which the committee has been appointed.

17. The National Museums may, so far as its financial and other resources permit, undertake research to undertake and conduct other activities of scientific, cultural research, etc. technological or human interest by means of lectures, exhibits, tours or publications.
PART III – FINANCIAL PROVISIONS

18. The funds of the National Museums shall comprise -

(a) such monies as may be appropriated by Parliament for the purposes of the National Museums;

(b) such monies as may accrue to or vest in the National Museums in the course of the exercise of its powers or the performance of its functions under this Act;

(c) all monies from any other source provided for donated or lent to the National Museums.

19. The Financial Year of the National Museums shall be the period of twelve months ending on the thirtieth June in every year.

Annual Estimates.

20.(1) The Board shall before the commencement of a financial year cause to be prepared estimates of revenue and expenditure of the Board for that financial year.

(2) The annual estimates shall make provisions for all the estimated expenditure of the Board for the financial year concerned and in particular shall provide for –
(a) the payment of salaries, allowances and other charges in respect of the staff of the National Museums;

(b) the payment of pensions, gratuities and other charges in respect of retirement benefits which are payable out of the funds of the National Museums;

(c) the proper maintenance of buildings and grounds of the National Museums;

(b) the funding of training, research and development activities of the National Museums;

(c) the acquisition, maintenance, repair and replacement of the equipment and other movable property of the National Museums;

(d) the creation of such reserve funds to meet future or contingent liabilities in respect of retirement benefits, insurance or replacement of buildings or equipment, or in respect of such other matters as the Board may deem appropriate.

(3) The annual estimates shall be approved by the Board before the commencement of the financial year to
which they relate and shall be submitted to the Minister for approval:

Provided that once approved, the sum provided in the estimates shall not be increased without the prior consent of the Board.

(4) No expenditure shall be incurred for the purposes of the National Museums except in accordance with the annual estimates approved under subsection (3) or in pursuance of an authorization of the Board with the prior approval of the Minister.

21. The Board may invest any of the funds of the National Museums in securities in which for the time being trustees may by law invest funds or in any other securities which the Treasury may from time to time approve for that purpose.

22. The National Museums may not grant to a member of the Board or staff any loan or advance, or arrange any credit facility for the member except with regulations made by it under this section and approved by the Treasury.

23.(1) The Board shall cause to be kept all proper books and records of accounts of the income, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the National Museums.
(2) The Board shall within three months from the end of the financial year submit to the Controller and Auditor-General or an auditor appointed under subsection (3), the accounts of the National Museums together with—

(a) a statement of income and expenditure during the year; and

(b) a statement of the assets and liabilities of the National Museums on the last day of that year.

(3) The accounts of the National Museums shall be audited by the Controller and Auditor-General or by an auditor appointed by the Board with the written approval of the Controller and Auditor-General.

(4) The appointment of an auditor shall not be terminated by the Board without the prior written consent of the Controller and Auditor-General.

(5) The Controller and Auditor-General may give general or specific directions to an auditor appointed under subsection (3) and the auditor shall comply with such directions.

(6) An auditor appointed under subsection (3) shall report directly to the Controller and Auditor-General on any matter relating to the directions given under subsection (5).
(7) The Controller and Auditor-General shall within six months after the end of the financial year report on the examination and audit of the accounts of the National Museums to the Minister, and where an auditor has been appointed under subsection (3) he shall transmit a copy of the report to the Controller and Auditor-General.

(8) The fee payable to an auditor appointed under subsection (3) shall be fixed and paid by the Board.

(9) Nothing in this Act shall be construed to prohibit the Controller and Auditor-General from carrying out an inspection of the National Museums accounts or records whenever it appears to him desirable.

(10) Notwithstanding anything in this Act, the Controller and Auditor-General may transmit to the Minister a special report on any matters incidental to his powers under this Act and the Public Audit Act, 2003.

24.(1) The Board shall, within three months after the end of each financial year, prepare and submit to the Minister a report of the operations of the Board for the immediate preceding year.

(2) The Minister shall lay the annual report before the National Assembly within three months of the day the Assembly next sits after the report is presented to him.
PART IV – HERITAGE DECLARATIONS

25.(1) After consultation with the National Museums the Minister may by notice in the Gazette declare-

(a) an open space to be a protected area within the meaning of this Act,

(b) a specified place or immovable structure which the Minister considers to be of historical interest, and a specified area of land under or adjoining it which is in the Minister’s opinion required for maintenance thereof, to be a monument within the meaning of this Act;

(c) a specified site on which a buried monument or object of archaeological or palaeontological interest exists or is believed to exist, and a specified area of land adjoining it which is in the Minister’s opinion required for maintenance thereof, to be a protected area within the meaning of this Act;

(d) a specified object or type of object, whether or not part of an immovable structure, which the Minister considers to be of historical, cultural,
or scientific interest, to be a protected object within the meaning of this Act;

(e) a building and a specified area of land adjoining it which in the Minister's opinion is required for the maintenance thereof to be a protected building within the meaning of this Act; or

(f) a geopark to be a protected area within the meaning of this Act;

and the notice shall state that objections to a declaration made under this section shall be lodged with the Minister within two months from the date of publication of the notice.

(2) A copy of every notice published under subsection (1) shall, if referring to an immovable object or site, be posted by the National Museums in a conspicuous place, on or near that object or site or on the area to which it relates, and if referring to a specified movable object, be delivered or sent to the person in whose possession that object is or is believed to be.

(3) On the expiration of the period of two months, the Minister, after considering the objections, if any, shall confirm or withdraw the notice.
(4) An object or area of land declared by or under the Preservation of Objects of Archaeological and Palaeontological Interest Act' or under the Antiquities and Monuments Act (both now repealed) to be a protected object, monument or protected area shall be deemed to be a protected object, monument or protected area, as the case may be, within the meaning of this Act.

(5) No declaration made and gazetted by the Minister under this section may be revoked without the consent of the National Museums.

(6) Notice of the proposal for revocation shall be published in the gazette and the Minister shall consider all objections or recommendations made to the Minister within two months after the publication of the notice.

(7) Where it appears to the Director-General that any heritage which the Director-General considers requires to be protected by a declaration under this section is in imminent danger of serious damage or destruction, the Director-General may make an order protecting the said heritage in the manner set out by him.

(8) An order made under subsection (7) shall have effect in applying all the provisions of this Act including criminal penalties with immediate effect as if the notice had been given by the Minister and confirmed under subsection (3).
(9) Immediate notice of an order made subsection (7) shall be given to the Minister and the order shall be operative for one month, save that if a recommendation has in that time been made by the National Museums to the Minister for a declaration under subsection (1), the order shall be operative until the decision of the Minister.

26. The National Museums shall maintain a register or registers of-

(a) all collections of all museums, and all instruments under its control.

(b) all declarations made or deemed to have been made by the Minister under this Act,

which register or registers the public may search.

PART V – SEARCHES AND DISCOVERIES

27.(1) Unless authorized by an exploration licence issued by the Minister after consultation with the Board, no person shall by means of excavation or surface operations search for a buried monument or buried part of a monument, or for a buried antiquity, whether or not in a protected area.

(2) Before making recommendations to the Minister on the issuance of an exploration licence, the
National Museums shall satisfy itself that the applicant is competent by both training and experience to carry out an exploration or excavation in accordance with the most recent scientific methods, and may require the applicant to satisfy it that he has the support, financial and otherwise, of an archaeological or scientific society or institution of repute.

(3) Every exploration licence issued under this section shall contain an agreement that the licensee, or the institution which the licensee represents, will, at such intervals or within such period as may be specified by that licence, produce a detailed written report or publication on the results of the exploration and excavation, and will deposit with the National Museums two copies of the report or publication.

(4) An exploration licence may specify, in regard to the acts which it authorizes, such limitations and conditions as the Minister considers necessary:

(a) in order to protect a monument from injury, removal or dispersion;

(b) in respect of antiquities for the removal of finds to a place in Kenya, or temporarily to a place outside Kenya for the purpose only of special examination or preservative treatment.
28. An exploration licence:

(a) shall be valid for a period not exceeding one year, but may be renewed for a further period or further periods not exceeding one year at a time;

(b) may be revoked at any time if the Minister is of the opinion that the holder thereof has failed to conform with any of his express or implied obligations thereunder;

(c) shall be in the prescribed form; and

(d) shall not entitle the holder thereof to enter upon any land without the consent of the owner thereof, otherwise than as provided by section 29.

29. (1) For the purposes of an exploration licence, the holder thereof may enter upon any area of land specified in the licence, whether or not private land, and whether or not a protected area, and exercise there all rights conferred by the exploration licence, for such period and subject to such limitations and conditions as may be stated in the licence.
(2) Where the holder of an exploration licence intends, pursuant to any licence, to enter upon private land, the holder shall give not less than seven days' notice to the occupier, and if practicable to the owner of the land.

(3) In the case of Trust land service on the county council in which the land is vested of a written notice, specifying the exploration licence and the nature and duration of, and the land affected by it, shall be sufficient notice of all subsequent activities in accordance with the exploration licence, both to the county council and to the residents for whose benefit the council holds the land.

(4) Whenever, in the course of operations carried on by the holder of an exploration licence, disturbance of the rights of the owner or occupier of private land, or damage to the land, or to crops, trees, buildings, stock or works therein or thereon, is caused, the holder of an exploration licence shall be liable to pay or make to the owner or occupier such compensation as is fair and reasonable having regard to the extent of the disturbance or damage and to the interest of the owner or occupier in the land.

(5) If the holder of an exploration licence fails to pay or make compensation when demanded under subsection (4), or if an owner or occupier is dissatisfied with the amount or nature of any compensation offered to him thereunder, the owner or occupier may, within six months of the date on which the demand or offer is made, but not in
any case later than two years after the occurrence of the disturbance or damage, appeal to the Minister whose decision shall be final.

(6) In the case of disturbance of the rights of occupiers of Trust land, or damage to any such land-

(a) an occupier who claims to be entitled to compensation under subsection (4) shall, within six months after the occurrence of the disturbance or damage, apply to the District Commissioner of the district in which the land is situated;

(b) the District Commissioner shall notify the Minister and the holder of the exploration licence of the application made under paragraph (a);

(c) the Minister shall appoint a panel of three persons under the chairmanship of the District Commissioner, which shall afford the owner or occupier a reasonable opportunity of being heard in relation thereto, and if satisfied that the applicant is entitled to compensation, shall make an award in his favour in accordance with subsection (4);
(d) the panel shall give notice in writing to the applicant and to the holder of the exploration licence of the award or of the rejection of the award;

(e) the applicant or the holder of an exploration licence may appeal to the Minister against the decision of the panel under paragraph (d) and the Ministers' decision shall be final;

(f) a sum payable under an award shall be deposited by the holder of the exploration licence with the District Commissioner upon the expiry of thirty days from notification of the award or from a final appeal decision, as the case may be;

(g) the District Commissioner shall be responsible for paying the compensation awarded to the person entitled thereto, and every such payment shall be made in a single payment;

(h) an award made under this subsection shall be enforceable as if it were a decree of a competent court.

30. Where a person discovers a monument or
object of archaeological or palaeontological interest, the person shall, within seven days, give notice thereof, indicating the precise site and circumstances of the discovery, to the National Museums, and in the case of an object, shall deliver the object to the National Museums or to the District Commissioner to keep it for any particular purpose or for any particular period.

31. Subject to section 27, no person shall move a monument or object of archaeological or palaeontological interest from the place where it has been discovered otherwise than in such manner and to such place as may be allowed by an exploration licence, or by written permit from the Minister after consultation with the National Museums.

32. A person who –

(a) engages in a search contrary to section 27;

(b) being the holder of an exploration licence, fails to conform with any of the Minister's express or implied obligations under the licence;

(c) enters upon private land pursuant to the licence without having given previous notice
and such security, if any, as may have been directed in accordance with section 29;

(d) fails to comply with the provisions of section 30; or

(e) moves a monument or object of archaeological or palaeontological interest contrary to section 31,

commits an offence and shall on conviction be liable to a fine not exceeding one million shillings or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to both such fine and imprisonment.

PART VI – PROTECTED AREAS

33. A protected area or part thereof which is an area of Trust land may be set aside as such in accordance with the provisions of section 118 of the Constitution.

34. The Minister may, in respect of a protected area, from time to time –

(a) by notice in the Gazette, prohibit or restrict access thereto or any development thereof, or the use thereof for agriculture or livestock, or activity thereon which in the Minister’s opinion is liable to damage a monument or
object of archaeological or palaeontological interest therein;

(b) place the protected areas under the control of the National Museums, on such terms and with and subject to such powers and duties as he may direct;

(c) take, or authorize the National Museums to take, such steps as are in the Minister's opinion necessary or desirable for the maintenance thereof;

(d) make or authorize the National Museums to make by-laws for controlling access thereto, with or without payment, and the conduct therein of visitors thereto.

35.(1) Where private land is included in a protected area, and the development or other use of that land by the owner or occupier thereof is prohibited or restricted by the Minister, or, by reason of any steps taken by the Minister, or by the Board with the authority of the Minister, on or in relation to the private land, the rights of the owner or occupier are disturbed in any way, or damage to the land, or to crops, trees, buildings, stock or works therein or thereon is caused, the Government shall on demand pay to the owner or occupier such compensation as is fair and reasonable having regard to the extent of the
prohibition, restriction, disturbance or damage and to the interest of the owner or occupier in the land.

(2) The provisions of subsections (4) and (5) of section 29 shall apply mutatis mutandis to a claim for compensation under this section.

36. A person who -

(a) enters upon a protected area or does therein any act or thing contrary to a prohibition or restriction of which notice has been given by the Minister under section 34(a); or

(b) commits a breach of any-law made by the Minister or by the National Museums under section 34(d),

commits an offence and shall on conviction be liable to a fine not exceeding one million shillings or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to both such fine and imprisonment.

PART VII - MONUMENTS

37. A heritage warden, or any other person authorized in writing by the National Museums, may at any reasonable time -
(a) enter and inspect a monument; or

(b) make photographs, measurements, drawings or other records of particulars of a monument; or

(c) if so required by the National Museums carry out, at the expense of the National Museums, repairs to a monument:

Provided that where a monument is inhabited, not less than one month's previous notice in writing shall be given to the occupier of the intention to carry out repairs thereto.

38. The National Museums may purchase or take on lease or accept a gift or bequest of a monument or antiquity.

39.(1) The owner of a monument may, by written instrument, constitute the National Museums the guardian of the monument, if the National Museums agrees.

(2) The National Museums shall be the guardian of any monument which is the property of the Government or has no apparent owner.

(3) An instrument which constitutes the National Museums the guardian of a monument shall provide for the
matters mentioned in section 40(2) as if it were an agreement under that section.

40.(1) The National Museums may enter into a written agreement with the owner of a monument and any other person or persons for the protection or preservation of the monument.

(2) An agreement under this section may provide for all or any of the following matters –

(a) the maintenance of the monument;

(b) the custody of the monument and the duties of any person who may be employed in connexion therewith;

(c) the occupation or use of the monument by the owner or otherwise;

(d) the restriction of the right of the owner or occupier to build or to do other acts or things on or near the site of the monument;

(e) the facilities of access to be permitted to the public or to any portion of the public and to persons deputed by the owner or the National Museum to inspect or maintain the monument;
the notice to be given to the National Museum in case the owner intends to offer the land on which the monument is situated for sale, lease or other disposal thereof, and the right to be reserved to the National Museum to have first refusal of any such sale, lease or other disposal;

the payment of any expenses incurred by the owner or by the National Museums in connection with maintenance of the monument;

the removal of the monument or any part thereof, subject to the provisions of this Act, to a place of safe custody;

the duration of the agreement, with provision for earlier termination thereof by any party thereto;

the procedure relating to the settlement of any dispute arising out of the agreement; and

any other matter connected with the protection or preservation of the monument which is a proper subject of agreement between the owner and the National Museum;
(3) The terms of an agreement under this section may be altered from time to time with the consent of all parties thereto.

(4) An agreement under this section shall be binding on any person claiming to be owner of the monument to which it relates through or under a party by whom on or whose behalf the agreement was executed.

(5) Any rights acquired by the National Museums or by the owner in respect of expenses incurred in maintenance shall not be affected by the termination of an agreement under this section.

41. (1) If the owner or any other person who is bound by the terms of an instrument which constitutes the National Museums guardian of a monument under section 39(3) or of an agreement for the protection and preservation of a monument under section 40 refuses to do an act which is in the opinion of the National Museums is both necessary for the protection, preservation or maintenance of the monument and the responsibility of the owner or other person in accordance with the terms of the instrument or agreement, or neglects to do the act within such reasonable time as may be fixed by the National Museums, the National Museums may authorise any person to do that act and the expense thereof, if and so far as it is
established to have been the responsibility of the owner or other person, shall be recoverable from him.

(2) If the National Museums establishes that the owner or occupier of a monument which is the subject of any such instrument or agreement intends to build or to do any other act or thing in contravention of the terms of the instrument or agreement, the High Court may grant an injunction to restrain that building or other act or thing.

42. If the Minister considers that a monument is in danger of being destroyed, injured or allowed to fall into decay, he may acquire the monument by way of compulsory purchase under the provisions of the Land Acquisition Act but that power shall not be exercised—

(a) in the case of a monument which, or any part of which, is periodically used for religious observances;

(b) so long as the monument is under the guardianship of the National Museums as provided by section 39 or the subject of an agreement for its protection and preservation as provided by section 40; and

(c) if the owner of the monument is willing to constitute the National Museums guardian thereof as provided by section 39 or to enter
into an agreement for its protection as provided by section 40 or to give, sell or lease to the Government or the National Museums the monuments on acceptable terms, and has executed the necessary instrument or agreement for that purpose within two months after being invited so to do.

43. (1) A monument which is for the time being owned by the National Museums, or under the guardianship of the National Museums as provided by section 39, or the subject of an agreement for its protection or preservation as provided by section 40, shall be properly maintained by the National Museums, except so far as its maintenance is, by such guardianship or agreement the responsibility of the owner of the monument or of any other person.

(2) The National Museums may enforce all obligations of the owner of the monument or of any other person to maintain it.

(3) When any such monument or any part thereof is used periodically for religious observances, the National Museums shall make due provision for the protection of the monument from pollution or desecration—

(a) by prohibiting entry therein, except in accordance with by-laws made with the concurrence of the persons in religious charge
of the monument or part thereof, of any person not entitled so to enter by the religious usage of the sect or community by which the monument or part thereof is used; or

(b) by taking such other action the National Museums deems necessary.

(4) Subject only to any by-laws made under subsection (3) in respect of a monument or part thereof used for religious observances, and to the terms of any instrument whereby the National Museums has been constituted guardian or of any agreement for protection or preservation of a monument, the public shall have right of access to a monument referred to in subsection (1) on such conditions as regards payment, if any, and otherwise as the National Museums approves.

44. Subject to the conditions of any instrument or other transaction, the National Museums may -

(a) where rights have been acquired by it in respect of a monument by virtue of a sale, lease, gift or bequest, relinquish those rights in favour of the person who would for the time being be the owner of the monument if those rights had not been acquired; or
(b) relinquish any guardianship which the Board has accepted under the provisions of this Act.

45.(1) A person who -

(a) destroys, removes, injures, alters or defaces or does any act that imperils the preservation of a monument;

(b) obstructs the exercise by a heritage warden or other duly authorized person of any of the powers conferred by section 37; or

(c) commits a breach of any by-laws regulating the entry of persons into a monument which is used for religious observances, or of any other condition of access to a monument,

commits an offence and shall on conviction be liable to a fine not exceeding one million shillings or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to both such fine and imprisonment, and on conviction of an offence against paragraph (a) may be ordered by the convicting court to pay to the National Museums for the purpose of making good any damage caused by that offence such sum of money as may be found by that court to be necessary to defray the cost thereof.

(2) In the event of any threatened or continuing act contrary to subsection (1)(a) the High Court may on the
application of the National Museums grant an injunction to restrain such act or its continuance.

PART VIII – ANTIQUITIES AND PROTECTED OBJECTS

46.(1) All antiquities which are lying in or under the ground, or on the surface of any land already protected under any law as a monument or being objects of archaeological, palaeontological or cultural interest are discovered in a part of Kenya after the commencement of this Act, shall be the property of the Government.

(2) The Minister may, on the recommendation of the National Museums, by notice in the Gazette, disclaim the ownership of any such antiquity.

47. A person shall, if so required in writing by the National Museums, within such period, not being less than one month as may be specified by the notice, furnish the National Museums with full particulars of all objects in the person’s possession which the person knows or has reason to believe to be antiquities or protected objects.

48. The Minister may after consultation with the National Museums, by notice in the Gazette, prohibit removal, without a permit from the Minister, of a specified antiquity or protected object, or of a specified class or
type thereof respectively, from the place where the antiquity or protected object or class or type thereof is then situated.

49.(1) No person shall, without a permit from the Minister, sell or otherwise part with ownership or possession of a protected object.

(2) No person shall buy or take by way of exchange an antiquity unless he has been licensed by the Minister in consultation with the National Museums to deal in antiquities.

(3) No person shall sell or give by way of exchange an antiquity to a person who has not been licensed by the Minister in consultation with the National Museums to deal in antiquities.

(4) The provisions of this section do not apply to acquisition by the Government or by the National Museums of a protected object or antiquity by way of sale, exchange, gift, bequest or loan.

50.(1) If the Minister considers that an antiquity or protected object is in danger of being destroyed, injured or allowed to fall into decay, or of being unlawfully removed, the Minister may, after consultation with the National Museums, acquire the antiquity or protected object by way of compulsory purchase, on the grounds that
acquisition is necessary in the interests of the utilization of the antiquity or protected object by preservation and display for the public benefit, subject to the prompt payment of full compensation as provided by section 75 of the Constitution.

(2) The power of compulsory acquisition under subsection (1) shall not be exercised if the owner of the antiquity or protected object is willing to deposit it with the National Museums by way of loan either permanently or for such period as the Minister deems necessary, and has executed the necessary agreement for that purpose within one month after being invited so to do.

51. A person who -

(a) without just cause fails to furnish the National Museums with full particulars of all objects in his possession which he knows or believes to be antiquities or protected objects, after being required in writing so to do within the period lawfully specified by a notice, as provided under section 47;

(b) willfully destroys or damages an antiquity or protected object;

(c) removes an antiquity or protected object contrary to section 48; or
(d) sells or otherwise parts with ownership or possession of a protected object, or sells or buys or gives or takes by way of exchange an antiquity, contrary to section 49,

commits an offence and shall on conviction be liable to a fine not exceeding one million shillings or twice the value of the antiquity or protected object concerned, whichever is the greater, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to both such fine and imprisonment.

PART IX – EXPORT

52.(1) No monument or part thereof, nor any antiquity or protected object may be removed from Kenya unless its removal has been specially authorized by a provision in an exploration licence, or by an export permit issued by the Minister on the recommendation of the National Museums under this section.

(2) An application for an export permit shall be made in writing to the Minister, and shall contain a full description of the monument or part thereof, or antiquity or protected object in respect of which it is made, the reason for the proposed removal, the place to which and the person into whose care it is to be removed, and such further information as may be prescribed.
(3) Before issuing an export permit the Minister may cause an inspection to be made, and the monument antiquity or protected object to be sealed or placed in his custody.

(4) The Minister may issue an export permit subject to such terms and conditions as the Minister may deem fit, or may, without assigning any reason, refuse to issue any export permit in respect of a specified monument or part thereof, an antiquity, or a protected object.

(5) An export permit may in particular be made subject to all or any of the conditions that-

(a) the subject-matter thereof shall be deposited in a specified place and in the care of specified persons;

(b) the subject-matter thereof shall be returned to Kenya within a specific period; and

(c) a specified portion of the subject-matter thereof shall be surrendered to the National Museums, or be deposited with the National Museums by way of loan permanently or for a specified period.

53.(1) In the event of the Minister’s refusal to issue an export permit for an object of historical value, or
imposing conditions which the owner does not accept, the owner may by notice to the Minister within three months thereafter require the Minister, as an alternative to issuing an export licence, to acquire the object by way of compulsory purchase as provided by section 42.

(2) The Minister shall, within six months after receipt of a notice under this section, either grant an unconditional export licence in respect of the object or proceed without undue delay to acquire it by way of compulsory purchase.

54. No monument or part thereof, antiquity or protected object shall be removed from Kenya otherwise than through a Customs port of entry; and the relevant export permit, or a copy of the relevant exploration licence certified by or on behalf of the Minister or the National Museums, as the case may be, shall be surrendered to a Customs officer before removal from Kenya is effected or allowed.

55. A person who -

(a) removes a monument or part thereof, an antiquity, or a protected object, from Kenya contrary to section 52 or section 54;

(b) fails to comply with any of the terms of conditions of an export permit; or
(c) obtains an export permit by an application containing information which the person knows to be false or incomplete in any material particular,

commits an offence and shall an conviction be liable to a fine not exceeding one million shillings or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to both such fine and imprisonment.

PART X – POWERS OF ENFORCEMENT

56.(1) An authorized representative of the National Museums may at any time inspect work being done in connexion with a monument or object of archaeological or palaeontological interest, and may for that purpose without warrant enter any premises, and may order the cessation of any such work pending further order from the National Museums.

(2) The National Museums shall report to the Minister any such order for cessation of work and the reasons for the order.

57.(1) The Minister may by notice in the Gazette appoint persons recommended by the National Museums to be heritage wardens for the purpose of enforcing this Act.
(2) A heritage warden appointed under subsection (1) may, with leave of the Attorney-General be appointed prosecutor for purposes of prosecuting offences committed under this Act.

58. A heritage warden may at any reasonable time inspect an antiquity or protected object which is the subject of a notice under section 48, and may for that purpose with written authority from the National Museums enter premises, where the antiquity or protected object is or should be, and require the production of the antiquity or protected object or information as to its whereabouts.

59. A police officer or heritage warden may-

(a) require any person whom the heritage warden has reason to believe has committed an offence under this Act to supply his name and address and reasonable evidence of his identity, and may without warrant arrest a person who refuses to comply with those requirements; and

(b) upon obtaining a warrant, at any time search any person or the premises occupied by any person whom he reasonably suspects of having acquired ownership or possession of a protected object, or of having bought or taken by way of exchange an antiquity, contrary to
section 49, and seize anything which has been so acquired, bought or taken by way of exchange, together with any container thereof.

60. A customs officer may at any time without warrant search anything intended to be removed from Kenya, or any person intending to leave Kenya, if the officer reasonably suspects that thing or person of containing or carrying a monument or part thereof, or an antiquity or protected object, and seize anything which the officer believes to be a monument or part thereof or antiquity or protected object that is in process of being removed from Kenya contrary to section 52 or section 54, together with any container thereof.

61.(1) Anything seized under section 59 or section 60 shall as soon as possible be taken before a magistrate who -

(a) in respect of seizure under section 59, shall order forfeiture to the Government of the thing seized together with any container thereof if it is established that the thing seized is a protected object the ownership or possession of which has been acquired, or an antiquity that has been bought or taken by way of exchange, contrary to section 49; and
in respect of seizure under section 60, shall order forfeiture to the Government of the thing seized together with any container thereof if it is established that the thing seized is a monument or part thereof, an antiquity or protected object that was in the process of being removed from Kenya contrary to section 52 or section 54,

whether or not the magistrate also convicts any person of an offence committed under this Act in relation to the same thing and imposes on that person any other penalty.

(2) Anything forfeited to the Government under subsection (1) shall, unless the Minister sees fit to restore it to its owner, be deposited with the National Museums.

62. The National Museums may attach to or erect on a monument or protected area such notice or notices as it deems necessary for the better protection of the monument or protected area.

63. A person who -

(a) obstructs an authorized representative of the National Museums, a police officer, heritage warden, or Customs officer, in the exercise of his powers or duties under this Act;
(b) fails without reasonable cause to comply with a lawful order or requirement of an authorized representative of the National Museums, a police officer, heritage warden, or Customs officer, under this Act; or

(c) destroys, removes or damages a notice attached or erected by the National Museums in exercise of the power conferred by section 62,

commits an offence and shall on conviction be liable to a fine not exceeding one million shillings or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to both such fine and imprisonment.

PART XI- GENERAL

Burden of proof. 64. In any proceedings under this Act, where the Minister has certified in writing that in his opinion, on the advice of the National Museums, a thing is a monument, an object of archaeological or palaeontological interest, an object of historical interest or a protected object, as the case may be, the burden of proof shall lie upon any person who asserts the contrary.

Exemption from 65. An instrument or agreement executed under
this Act shall be exempt from stamp duty chargeable under the Stamp Duty Act.

66. After consultation with the Board, the Minister may make rules for carrying out any of the purposes of this Act, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing for all or any of the following purposes –

(a) prescribing conditions for the preservation and use of open spaces which may prescribe different conditions for different open spaces;

(b) prescribing conditions for the protection, preservation and alteration of national monuments;

(c) prescribing conditions for the protection, preservation, alteration and access to and use of protected buildings including the manner in which application may be made and consent given for any alteration, internal or external, to such protected buildings;

(d) prescribing conditions for the protection, preservation, alteration and access to and use of areas of natural heritage;
prescribing the forms of, and conditions to be implied in exploration licences and export permits;

(f) regulating the management of a protected area;

(g) controlling the reproduction of objects of archaeological or palaeontological interest;

(h) licensing dealers in antiquities;

(i) prescribing penalties for breach of any such rules;

(j) prescribing the fees to be charged under this Act.

67. (1) No person shall operate a museum except in accordance with a licence granted by the Minister, which shall be subject to such terms and conditions as the Minister may think fit.

(2) An application for a licence in respect of an existing museum shall be made within six months of the coming into operation of this Act.

68. The Minister may, on the advice of the National Museums, make Regulations –
70. The Antiquities and Monuments Act and the National Museums Act are hereby repealed.

PART XII – MISCELLANEOUS

71. Section 23 of the Copyright Act is amended by adding thereto the following new subsection immediately after subsection (4);

(5) Notwithstanding anything else contained in this Act copyright in works eligible for copyright and vested in the National Museums Board of Directors or the National Museums is conferred in perpetuity on the National Museums.

72. Section 145 of the Local Government Act is amended by deleting paragraph (y) and substituting therefor the following new paragraph –

(y) subject to the provisions of the National Museums and Heritage Act, 2006, establish and maintain public monuments.

73. Section 201 of the Local Government Act is amended by adding the following new subsection immediately after subsection (4)-

(5) By-laws which affect any cultural or natural heritage declared or deemed to have been declared as
such by the Minister may only be made after consultation with the National Museums of Kenya.

74. Section 7(1) of the Mining Act is amended by adding the following new paragraph immediately after paragraph (k) -

(kk) any land in or within one hundred metres of any monument or protected area declared or deemed to have been declared as such by the Minister under the National Museums and Heritage Act.

75. Section 17(1) of the Registration of Business Names Act is amended by adding the following paragraph immediately after paragraph (c) –

(cc) which includes the words “Old Law Courts Mombasa” “National Monument” “Lamu Fort” “Nairobi Botanical Gardens” “Nairobi Snake Park” National Museum” “Fort Jesus”, or “Karen Blixen”

76. Section 47 of the Physical Planning Act is amended –

(a) by deleting the phrase “the Antiquities and Monuments Act” wherever it appears and substituting therefor the phrase “National Museums and Heritage Act”;
(b) by adding the following new subsection immediately after subsection (2) -

(3) All regional and development plans shall take into account and record all heritage declared or deemed to have been declared by the Minister under the National Museums and Heritage Act.

77. Section 38 of the Environmental Management and Co-ordination Act is amended by inserting the following new paragraph immediately after paragraph (j).

(jj) take into account and record all monuments and protected areas declared or deemed to have been declared by the Minister under the National Museums and Heritage Act.

78. Section 116 of the Government Lands Act is amended in subsection (1A) by adding to the following words immediately after the word “absolutely” -

and shall lodge a non-absolute caveat over any property in respect of which he is informed by the National Museums of Kenya that a declaration by the Minister under the National...
Museums and Heritage Act has been applied for, or is about to be gazetted or has been gazetted affecting the property in question; and upon gazettlement the caveat takes effect as a charge over the land.

79. Section 65 of the Registration of Titles Act is amended in paragraph(i)(f) by adding the following words immediately after the word “absolutely”-

“and shall lodge a non-absolute caveat over any property in respect of which he is informed by the National Museums of Kenya that a declaration by the Minister under the National Museums and Heritage Act has been applied for, or is about to be gazetted or has been gazetted affecting the property in question and upon gazettlement the caveat takes effect as a charge over the land”.

80. Section 72 of the Land Titles Act is amended in subsection (1A) by adding the following words immediately after the word “absolutely”-

“and shall lodge a non-absolute caveat over any property in respect of which he is informed by the National Museums Board of Directors that a declaration by the Minister under the National Museums and Heritage Act has been applied for, or is about to be gazetted or has been gazetted affecting the property in question; upon gazettlement the caveat takes effect as a charge over the land.”
81. Section 136 of the Registered Land Act is amended by adding the following subsection immediately after subsection (3) -

(4) The Registrar shall make a restriction expressed to endure until the making of a further order when the Registrar is informed by the National Museums of Kenya that a declaration of heritage by the Minister under the National Museums and Heritage Act has been applied for, or is about to be gazetted or has been gazetted affecting the property in question and upon gazettement the restriction shall take effect as a charge over the land.

SCHEDULE (sec. 10)

PROVISIONS AS TO THE CONDUCT OF THE AFFAIRS OF THE BOARD

Meetings.

1.(1) The Board shall meet not less than four times in every financial year and not more than four months shall elapse between the date of one meeting and the date of the next meeting.

(2) Notwithstanding subparagraph (1), the Director-General may, and upon requisition in writing by at least five members shall, convene a special meeting of the Board at any time for the transaction of the business of the Board.
(3) Unless three quarters of the total members of the Board otherwise agree, at least fourteen days' written notice of every meeting of the Board shall be given to every member of the Board.

(4) The chairman shall preside at every meeting of the Board at which he is present but in his absence, the vice-chairman shall preside and shall, with respect to that meeting and the business transacted thereat, have all the powers of the chairman.

(5) In the event of the absence of both the chairman and the vice-chairman, the members present shall elect one of their number to preside, who shall, with respect to that meeting and the business transacted thereat, have all the powers of the chairman.

(6) Unless a unanimous decision is reached, a decision on any matter before the Board shall be—by a majority of the votes of the members present and voting and in the case of an equality of votes, the chairman or the vice-chairman or the person presiding shall have a casting vote.

(7) Subject to the provisions of this Schedule, the Board may determine its own procedure and the procedure for any committee of the Board and for the attendance of other persons at its meetings and may make standing orders in respect thereof.

2. The affixing of the common seal of the Board shall be authenticated by the signature of the chairman and the Director-General and any document not required by law to be made under seal and all decisions of the
Board may be authenticated by the signatures of the chairman and the Director-General:

Provided that the Board shall, in the absence of either the chairman or the Director-General in any particular matter, nominate one member to authenticate the seal of the Board on behalf of either the chairman or the Director-General.

Contracts and instruments.

3. Any contract or instrument which, if entered into or executed by a person not being a body corporate, would not require to be under seal, may be entered into or executed on behalf of the Board by any person generally or specially authorised by the Board for that purpose.
Appendix 2. Legal texts

SCHEDULE

Fort Jesus National Monument
(formerly Fort Jesus National Park)*

An area of land 2.306 hectares (approximately) known as
Mombasa—Block XXV, Parcel No. 80, situated within Mombasa
Municipality (Island), Mombasa District, Coast Province.

The boundaries of which are more particularly defined by
edged blue on Boundary Plan No. 537/3, which is signed, sealed
with the seal of the Survey of Kenya and is deposited at

*Legal Notice No. 477 of 24th October 1958, has been revoked vide Legal Notice No. 243 of 7th November
Gazette Notice No. 2092

THE ANTIQUITIES AND MONUMENTS ACT

(Cap. 215)

DECLARATION OF MONUMENT

IN EXERCISE of the powers conferred by section 4 (1) (a) of the Antiquities and Monuments Act, the Minister for Home Affairs and National Heritage declares the area of land specified in the schedule, to be a monument within the meaning of the Act. Any objection to the declaration of any of those areas of land as a monument shall be lodged with the Minister within one month from the date of publication of this notice.

SCHEDULE

Name: Historic Old Town
Locality: Mombasa Town

All that area of land measuring approximately 13.0 (sic) hectares known as the Old Town including that part of the town known as Mji wa Kale, in Mombasa Town, Mombasa District, Coast Province, the boundaries of which are more particularly delineated red on the boundary plan No. 537/6, which is signed, sealed with the seal of the Survey of Kenya, and deposited at the Survey Records Office, Survey of Kenya, Nairobi, and a copy of which may be inspected at the office of the District Commissioner, Mombasa, Coast Province.

Dated the 24th April, 1990

D. N. Kuguru,

Minister for Home Affairs and National Heritage
REVISED MANAGEMENT PLAN OF FORT JESUS

BY NATIONAL MUSEUMS OF KENYA, FORT JESUS MUSEUM

JANUARY, 2008
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We are extremely grateful to the initial sponsors of this program namely, ICCROM, CRATere – EAG, NORAD, Sida, World Heritage Fund, Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Italy and the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Finland who brought together all those who participated in the exercise. These are the coordinators of the Africa 2009 course, resource persons, course assistants and participants. Others that we are deeply indebted are Members of the Mombasa Old Town and other stakeholders including both public and private institution.
PREFACE

This management plan is a review of earlier drafts produced, following an eight-week site management planning exercise carried out by 2 groups of participants of the Africa 2009 3rd Regional Course on Conservation and Management of Immovable Cultural Heritage held in Mombasa, Kenya in September, 2001.

It was done through a hectic and elaborate process of physically examining, assessing, evaluating, researching, interviewing, analyzing, conferring and adopting the various experiences from both the participants and resource persons to produce the initial document. It was designed for a 5 year period after which was subject for periodic evaluations after every five years. Ideally it was to be evaluated in 2006 but this was not possible until January 2008.

Most of the physical issues that were highlighted to be affecting the site then, like corroded window bars, chunks of concrete popping off due to corroded reinforcement, decay of timber beams due to dry and wet rot have been addressed, however, there are new threats that have been observed and these are the ones that have been captured in this evaluation.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0. LOCATION AND DESCRIPTION ................................................................. 5
2.0. CURRENT USE ........................................................................................... 7
3.0. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND ...................................................................... 8
  3.1. Building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa .............................................................. 8
4.0. LEGAL FRAMEWORK .................................................................................. 10
5.0. MANAGEMENT AND RESOURCES ........................................................... 11
6.0. STATE OF CONSERVATION ....................................................................... 13
  6.1. History of Conservation ........................................................................... 13
  6.2. Condition Survey ..................................................................................... 14
7.0. INTERPRETATION AND PRESENTATION ..................................................... 15
  7.1. Presentation ............................................................................................ 16
  7.2. Interpretation .......................................................................................... 16
  7.3. Presentation and Interpretation Problems ................................................ 17
8.0. SYNTHESIS ............................................................................................... 18
  Statement of Significance ............................................................................. 18
  8.1. Values ...................................................................................................... 18
  8.1.1. Historical values: .................................................................................. 18
  8.1.2. Architectural values: ........................................................................... 18
  8.1.3. Educational values: ............................................................................. 19
  8.1.4. Social values: ...................................................................................... 19
  8.1.4. Economic values: ................................................................................ 19
9.0. SWOT ANALYSIS ..................................................................................... 19
10.0. Guiding Principles ................................................................................... 22
11.0. Strategic Plan ............................................................................................ 23
  11.1. Management .......................................................................................... 23
  11.2. Establishing Sustainable Funding System ............................................. 23
  11.3. Site Presentation and interpretation ....................................................... 24
  11.4 Conservation Works ................................................................................. 25
  11.5. Promotion and Tourism ......................................................................... 25
  11.6. Education and Research ....................................................................... 26
12.0 Action Plan ................................................................................................. 27
13.0. Monitoring and Evaluation ....................................................................... 28

Appendices
1.0. LOCATION AND DESCRIPTION

Fort Jesus is located in the city of Mombasa on the east coast of Kenya. It is located between latitude 3 S 55° - 4 S 10° and Longitude 39 E 35° - 39 E 45°. It is bordered by the Swahili Cultural Centre on the southern side, the old Law Court building on the western side, Mombasa old town and the Mombasa Club on the north and the mouth of the old harbor on the eastern side. It is situated on the southern tip of Nkrumah road just adjacent to the Old Town. (See Map below).

Figure 1. Location of Fort Jesus in relation to Old Town

It was designed by an Italian architect and engineer Giovanni Battista Cairati (Joao Baptista Cairato), who was a leading military architect of the day. The design is that of a human form, regarded as the most perfect of God's creations, and its construction aimed to achieve a similar functional and formal perfection. This reasoning was characteristic of the Renaissance and was a base of the architectural theory of the age.
The plan of the Fort consists of a central court with bastions in the four corners and a rectangular gun platform facing the sea. It included basic facilities such as chapel, cistern, well and Captain’s house all covering an area of about two acres. All these except the cistern and the L-shaped building in S. Matias were destroyed in the course of the 18th Century and are now survived by ruins. The Fort has one main gate and two other passages facing the sea. The two passages were later blocked; however, in 2001 one of the passages was opened up to allow storm water to drain out of the Fort. A heavy metal grill was fitted across the passage for security where it opens out onto the outwork. Other features include parapet walks, firing steps, watchtowers and gun ports. There were barrack rooms on the north and south sides and guardrooms leading back from the main gate. The re-entrant angles of the two landward bastions in which cannons were placed to sweep the face of the opposite bastion stand out clearly.

The flanks of the landward bastions, S. Filipe (north) and S. Alberto (south), are made with deep re-entrant angles where they face each other to provide screened gun positions. The other flanks and the landward flanks of the seaward bastions, S. Matias (north) and S. Mateus (south) are square without re-entrant angles. The flanks of these bastions, S. Matias and S. Mateus are swept back to provide the widest possible field of the gunfire. The north and south faces of the rectangular projection are covered by the seaward bastions, but the main face, the east wall, was protected only by the guns of the outwork in front of it.

The Main Gate is in the lee of S. Matias, covered by the eastern flank of S. Filipe, and was reached by a wooden gangway (now filled with sand to create a bridge) across the ditch. Above it is the gatehouse, consisting of an upper and lower room. There were two subsidiary gates in the east wall of the projection (one is now blocked), reached from the central court by a sloping passage of the Arches and by a flight of the steps (the Passage of the Steps) and a third in the eastern wall of S. Mateus (which is also blocked).

The original defence on the landward sides consists of a 4.27 metres thick wall, comprising a parapet nearly 2.75 metres wide and 1 metre high, backed by a parapet walk and firing step. Later, walls were built on top of the old parapets so that the height was increased by 3 metres. The lower parts of the defences are made of solid coral cut back to the line of the walls, but more pronounced on the western side.

A dry moat surrounds three sides of the Fort which was necessitated by the dangerously rising slope of the ground beyond S. Filipe and S. Alberto. The height of the scarp is about 17 metres including the moat which is about 5 metres deep and 5 metres wide and surrounds the fortress on the landward sides. The Fort is a good deal above sea level to allow greater protection during a retreat.
The original materials used in the construction of the Fort are coral, lime, sand and clay. The facades were finished with a pigmented yellow ochre plaster. It has managed to retain much of its features since its construction in the 16th century.

![A 1950 aerial photo showing the various features of Fort Jesus, Mombasa](image)

2.0. CURRENT USE

During the colonial period the Fort was converted into an administrative centre and later on into a prison. Additional buildings to serve this purpose were constructed inside the fort. These included the kitchen and a hangman’s drop that was made against the re-entrant angle. Later a site museum, Conservation laboratory and an administration block were built on the old foundations of the barracks on the south eastern side of the central courtyard while on the north western part of the courtyard an ablution block was added.

Fort Jesus was officially opened to the public in 1960 and is currently both a Monument and Museum, attracting hundreds of thousands of both local and foreign tourists annually. It also serves as the Regional Headquarters for coastal museums and sites. In addition it is a popular site for social functions such as, wedding ceremonies, meetings, festivals and is host to a sound and light show. Further, the immediate surroundings of the fort are used by the Mombasa community for relaxation, sport, formal and informal trade. The moat on the North West is currently used as a car/bus parking area for visitors to the Fort, while the moat on the West and
South side is being landscaped with carpet grass with a tour trail to guide visitors around the Fort.

3.0.   HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

The East African Coast between Somalia and Mozambique has for centuries been inhabited by people of various backgrounds. Most of the Bantu speaking groups arrived in the area between A.D. 500 and 800 having come from the south. By about A.D. 1000, they had been joined by Arabs who came from Asia to settle along the coastal areas of East Africa. Independent city states such as Lamu, Mombasa, Malindi, Pemba, Kilwa and Zanzibar flourished along the coast. These Coastal settlements traded in gold, silk, ivory and skins with traders from as far as Persia, Arabia, Syria, India and even China. Some of the settlements grew more powerful than others.

The difference in wealth, and the resultant competition for control of the trade led to rivalries and even wars. For a long time Kilwa was the most important and most prosperous settlement on the coast. However, by 1490, its prosperity had begun to decline and was slowly giving way to Mombasa. Mombasa was founded about the same time with a rival settlement of Malindi, further north and prosperity of Mombasa brought fierce rivalries between it and city states including Malindi, Lamu and Pate.

3.1. Building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa.

From the first half of the 2nd Millennium, A.D. the Portuguese had developed navigational facilities that would take them to the world’s high seas. Portugal, which had been interested in finding a sea route to the East Indies, made the first successful attempt at the end of the 15th Century. A Portuguese sailor, Vasco da Gama passed through the Cape of Good Hope in 1497, reaching India in 1498. En route he passed through a number of ports and towns in Mozambique, Tanzania, Kenya and Somalia. Vasco da Gama, found most of these towns divided. He, however, noted their prosperous and commercial life; good harbours where merchant ships to India could refuel. During this first journey, he was received with mixed reactions with some ports welcoming him and others not. For instance, while Mombasa was hostile towards the Portuguese, Malindi on the other hand welcomed them and became their initial base on the East African coast.

However, before the coming of the Portuguese a number of foreigners had entrenched themselves at the coast and were actively involved with the local people in the trans-Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese had to break into the market and compete with these already established groups such as the Oman Arabs. This involved confrontations and ruthless takeovers of towns such as Mombasa and Kilwa that offered open resentment and unwillingness to pay tribute to Portugal. By 1509, the Portuguese had managed to take control of the area between Sofala, in Mozambique in the south and Socrata in the northern part of the East African coast.
In 1585, Turkey began taking interest on the coast, plundering and forcing various settlements to come under her control. Ali Bey, a Turkish pirate built a fort in Mombasa facing the Indian Ocean, and called it Ras Serani and began conspiring with the local people to drive the Portuguese out of Mombasa.

In order to consolidate their hold on the coast, the Portuguese Captain to the Coast, Mateus Mendes de Vasconcelos, then based at Malindi, was instructed to take his fleet to Mombasa and build a fortress. Initially Portuguese recaptured Ras Serani Fort rehabilitated it and renamed it Fort St. Joseph but this was not strategically positioned in relation to the harbour. Therefore in 1593, the Portuguese began to build a fortress in Mombasa at its present location that was to be called Fort Jesus, Mombasa. Fort Jesus, Mombasa became the new Portuguese Headquarters on the East African Coast and had a permanent garrison of a hundred soldiers. Other supporting forts of less magnitude were built on the island of Mombasa. Ruins of some of them are still visible around Mama Ngina Drive Heritage Site located about 1.5 kilometres south of the Fort and Makupa 3 kilometres to the west.

The building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa attracted Portuguese settlers and traders in large numbers never witnessed before in the region. Fort Jesus, Mombasa therefore bears testimony to the first successful attempt by Western civilization to stamp its authority on an area that had remained under trade influence of the East over several millennia. Towards the end of the 16th century English and Dutch joined the competition for control of the Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese with limited men and ships began to find it impossible to keep a check on their Arab and Turkish enemies while at the same time having to watch for rival English and Dutch ships.

Taking advantage of declining Portuguese control, the Omani Arabs began to raid the Portuguese possessions on the East African Coast, beginning in 1652. By 1678, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was the only remaining stronghold of Portuguese power on the northern part of the East African Coast. The Portuguese were finally expelled from the Fort, in December 1698 by the Omanis after a 33-month siege. The siege is known in history as the most remarkable event during the long Portuguese occupation of the East African Coast displaying the bravery of the Captain and his men during many months of bombardment, hunger and plague. Despite repeated attempts to recapture it, it was not until 1728 that the Portuguese managed to re-occupy it but only for 18 months.

The defeat of the Portuguese left the Omani Arabs in charge of the coastal settlements until the area was colonized by the British in 1885. Once under British rule, the fort was used as a prison until 1958 when it was declared a National Park, subsequently becoming a national monument and a museum. It still serves this function to date.
4.0. LEGAL FRAMEWORK

Fort Jesus was first gazetted as a National Park under legal notice No. 477 of 24th October, 1958. This legal notice was revoked when Fort Jesus was declared a monument under gazette notice No.1688 of 12th June, 1970. It was declared under the preservation of objects of Archaeological and Paleontological Interest Act cap 215. Subsequently, the then preservation of objects of Archaeological and Paleontological Interest Act was revised and in its place came the Antiquities and Monuments Act cap 215. This was revised in 2002 and replaced by the National Museums and Heritage Act 2006.

Under section 25(1b) of The Museums and Heritage Act, 2006, it states that: a specified place or immovable structure which the Minister considers to be of historical interest, and a specified area of land under or adjoining it which in the Minister’s opinion required for maintenance thereof, to be a monument within the meaning of this Act.

Currently, Fort Jesus is a declared National Monument under the Antiquities and Monuments Act replaced by the National Museums and Heritage Act of 2006.

The Old Town, in which the Fort is located, was also declared a conservation area under Gazette Notice No. 2092 of 11th May, 1990. This Gazettement was confirmed vide Gazette Notice 1779 of 3rd May, 1991, under the Antiquities and Monument Act now replaced by the National Museums and Heritage Act 2006. This declaration of the Old Town as a conservation area did not mean that there was a revocation of the gazettement regarding Fort Jesus. In a way it acts as a double protection on the Fort.
5.0. MANAGEMENT AND RESOURCES

Fort Jesus is managed by a Chief Curator, who is responsible for the day-to-day running of the site and reports directly to the Assistant Director, Museums Sites and Monuments, Coast. The Chief Curator is also answerable to the Director Regional Museums Sites and Monuments and the Director General.

Under the Chief Curator are heads of departments namely, Public Programmes, Collections, Administration, Finance and Sites. Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office (MOTCO), Coastal Archaeology, Coastal Sites and Monuments, Swahili Cultural Centre and CHEDA are answerable to the Chief Curator on administrative matters only and to the Assistant Director or the relevant Line Directors for professional and technical issues.

The Chief Curator also manages some sites mostly along the South coast which depend to some extent, on income generated from Fort Jesus.

The staff strength of the Fort consists of 104 employees, some of whom are permanent staff who carry out various activities. Within these staff members there are seven professionals and eleven technical staff with expertise in architecture, conservation, archaeology, museology and management. The other staffs are engaged in maintenance of the Fort.

Decision-making and operational activities including retention of revenue generated is to some extent decentralized with the Fort maintaining its own private bank account; however major decisions still remains centralized at headquarters in Nairobi.

The Fort, as part of NMK receives an annual grant from government to cover salaries and to meet other operational costs, including limited site conservation works. These funds are however, far inadequate to even meet major conservation activities. Most major conservation activities that have so far taken place at the Fort have been financed by donor funds. The site also raises a substantial amount of money annually which it sometimes uses to carry out minor site maintenance works.
5.1. Organogram of Fort Jesus, Mombasa

Figure 3. Fort Jesus organisational administrative structure
6.0. STATE OF CONSERVATION

6.1. History of Conservation

- The actual construction of Fort Jesus started in 1593.

- Following recommendations from Goa, several improvements were made between 1634 and 1639. These improvements included; construction work on the landward side, filling gaps between S. Alberto and S. Filipe and the west curtain wall, extending the west face of S. Matias and construction of an outer gate to lead to the older gate through a covered passage. The floors of the three bastions of S. Alberto, S. Filipe and S. Matias were also raised with a filling of coral chips and red earth to the level of the old parapets, and new walls with 1.22 metres wide gun-ports were built on top of them in S. Alberto and S. Matias. Other improvements included the construction of another platform on the landward side with two gun-ports covering the east face of S. Alberto and the south curtain wall and angel towers at the junction of the rectangular projection and the seaward bastions. Two cavaliers were also constructed in the landward bastions to cover the approaches from Kilindini and from Makupa, the ford of the Zimba.

- After the damages caused by the Great Siege of 1696 – 1698 the Omani Arabs who took over the Fort undertook various repairs and improvements. The area occupied by the outer rooms was filled to the level of the top of the Portuguese walls to make a broad platform, protected by musket slits and gun ports, while the door leading through a guardroom to the main court was blocked.

- From 1895 – 1958, the Fort was used as a Prison where most sections were used as barracks and accommodation for the Provincial Medical Officer and other government officials. The noticeable improvements that were made during this period were the construction of the hangman’s drop and the kitchen house.

- In 1958 Fort Jesus was declared a historical monument by the colonial government of Kenya. In the same year with funding from the Gulbenkian Calouste Foundation of Portugal restoration of Fort Jesus as a historical monument was carried out and in 1960 a building to house a museum was built inside the Fort and was then opened to the public as a historic monument.

- In 1976, three coronaries were moved to the battlements of the seaward projection and mounted in the gun points overlooking the harbour. Explanatory notices in English and Kiswahili (the local language) were placed near the guns giving an account of carronade and their uses, together with pictures of grape and canister shot such as might have been fired. External landscaping works at the entrance to the Fort were also undertaken. These works included concrete block paving of the entrance and construction of a protective “chain” fence. In the same year a major underwater
excavation in the shallows of Mombasa Harbour, below Fort Jesus, Mombasa to establish an identity of a wreck known to have existed, was sponsored by the Government of Kenya, the National Geographic Society, the Gulbenkian Foundation, the Institute of Nautical Archaeology and Western Maritime Museum of Australia.

- Following another excavation with funding from the Omani Government one of the houses, now known as the Omani House on the Northwest corner of the Fort was restored, and a permanent exhibition with assemblage of artifacts depicting the culture and traditions of the Omani people was opened to the public. In 1992, the area in front of the museum within Fort Jesus, Mombasa was landscaped.

- In 1993, Fort Jesus celebrated 400 years of existence. Donations from individuals both nationwide and worldwide made it possible to upgrade a number of areas in the Fort, including display and presentation of the Fort as a historical monument and paved the path approach towards the entrance gate of the Fort.

- In 2000, the National Museums of Kenya with a grant from the Gulbenkian Foundation of Portugal restored the exterior ramparts of the Fort landscaped the surrounding moat so that tours around the Fort could be introduced for visitors to appreciate the massive walls structure and the relationship with their setting and also for installation of external lighting.

6.2. Condition Survey

As part of the management planning the site was surveyed to assess the pathology of the building and site. Generally, the perimeter walls of the Fort are well preserved in their original state and height. The walls stand on a hard fossil coral reaching a height of more than 17 metres. The buildings inside the Fort built by the Portuguese are survived by clear remains of wall foundations and are well preserved and documented. Those buildings that were built later by the Omanis and during the British occupation are still standing. The Moat that surrounds the Fort is still in its original state and a lot of landscaping work is being undertaken to improve its presentation (see its condition, before 2008 and after).

![Figure 4. Before 2008](image1.jpg)  ![After 2008](image2.jpg)
However, there are environmental factors that affect the Fort; the most irritating one is the air that is loaded with salt lashing at the walls of the Fort. This creates the effects of both efflorescence and sub-florescence, the later being extremely damaging to the wall plaster and requires regular monitoring and maintenance. The other one is the global environmental changes that have increased the sea level. The effects of this change in the sea level have been that the tidal currents have started to undermine the coral that forms the base of the Fort. This is a serious threat; which require immediate attention as with time it might affect the fabric of the building.

![Fort Image](image)

**Figure 5. Effects of the tidal currents to the coral that forms the base of the Fort**

### 7.0. INTERPRETATION AND PRESENTATION

In 1958, the fort was declared a national park on account of its historical importance. The then colonial government realizing its educational and potential to attract visitors decided to develop the site for the enjoyment of the public. Major excavations within the inside of the fort were carried out between 1958 and 1969 to recover archaeological materials for both study and interpretation. At the same time, as part of site development, a number of works were carried out. These included building a museum on the foundation of a collapsed Portuguese barrack, erecting a curator’s house and constructing an ablution block. Once these works were completed the fort was opened to the public in 1962.
7.1. Presentation

Access to Fort Jesus is mainly by a terraced all weather road connected to the rest of the road network of Mombasa town. Ample car parking space is available. An access bridge and paved way leading from the car park into the inside of the Fort is used both for deliveries and by visitors.

Once inside, the visitor is first attended to from a ticket office adjacent to a cafeteria and not far away from the entrance, before being guided through the fort. Self-guided tours are also allowed.

Fort Jesus is presented as a whole (see ground plan for more details). The site display includes, the bastions, passage of the arches, ammunition store, barracks and chapel (now at ground level), Portuguese and British cannons and Portuguese paintings. A museum located within the Fort houses an exhibition of the artifacts recovered from the Fort and the various coastal areas of Kenya.

A soft drinks shop and a craft shop are housed in the former prisons office and kitchen respectively. The drinks shop sells a variety of soft drinks whilst the craft shops sells souvenirs. Separate toilets for male and female are available within the fort and are clearly sign posted. The entrance to the Fort serves as the exit as well.

7.2. Interpretation

As observed by Michael Haynes (2001), the free leaflet gives a brief description of how the fort began its existence, and a list of key dates in its history; the guidebook provides a deeper knowledge about the site, and is an attempt to describe various sections of the fort. Details concerning the salvage and conservation of the Santo Antonio de Tanna are also given.

Labeling signage is provided through small green signs situated on key parts of the Fort such as the panels at the Main Gate give a translation of Portuguese carvings and the Omani House, English and Swahili translation. There are also two notices in the main entrance showing the chronology of the Fort.

Descriptive text notices are displayed in the seven key areas, they include:
Four cannonades in the East Wall, and the Museum arcade.
There are two types of guides presently available at the Fort. One type of guide is brought in externally from the Fort, either hired from outside or brought in as a tour leader. The other type is available from the education office.

There is also reconstruction within the Omani House, a receiving room the Sultan would receive his guests, complemented by displays of associated Omani artifacts within the house.
7.3. Presentation and Interpretation Problems

Attempts have been made to interpret the Fort to visitors, as part of the history of the Kenyan coast. However, the way the Fort and its related military landscape have been presented does not communicate the complexity of its history, or attempt to unravel the many layers of historical events to the public nor presented to tell the story why the Fort was built where it stands and how it was built. Tours are concentrated in the inside of the Fort and not around the Moat though the outside is quite impressive but looks rather “dead”.

The evaluation revealed that Fort Jesus does not have enough signage outside to inform visitors of the location and direction.
The kitchen, built during British occupation and one of the important historical features within the Fort has no signage on it, and those that have; like the ones found at places such as the passage of the Arches and Ammunition store are too brief and hardly tells the visitors much.

The way the cannons were positioned does not reflect the historical development of the Fort in that tours begin with British cannons before seeing Portuguese ones and are inappropriately placed as they point to unlikely targets such as the Captain’s house and the Old Town of Mombasa.

It was also observed that the map showing the location of fort Jesus and the model of the fort are inappropriately located. This is because visitors need to access this information before or at the beginning of the site tour. Instead this information is found half way through the tour.

Exhibition spaces have assumed the roles of galleries in which other matters not related to the history of the Fort and it’s environ are exhibited. An example of this is the exhibition on the ethnographic exhibition on the Mijikenda. This creates a cognitive interruption for visitors, as their expectation and information gathered during most of the tour is related to the Fort and its history.

A few inaccuracies in the information provided by the tour guide were also noticed. These included the size of the island (given as 15 sq. km); purpose of building the fort given as protection of Portuguese future sailors, and that moat around the fort was constructed for storing water.

Sitting facilities for visitors to relax on are not available and alternatively visitors tend to make use of the parapet walls when they need to relax.
8.0. SYNTHESIS

Statement of Significance

Fort Jesus is one of the most significant sites on the Kenyan Coast. Built in the Mombasa Old Town in 1593, it is one of the best surviving examples of 16th century Portuguese military architecture in the world. Throughout history, the Fort has been at the center of hostilities between various conflicting interests; Portuguese versus Arabs versus Swahili versus British. It still bears scars from each of these eras.

The Fort is also an important historical landmark in the colonial history of Kenya. The Portuguese and later the Arabs used it as a stronghold to safeguard their interests on the East African coast and the East trade. The British, however, coming at a time when they were establishing their hegemony over most of Africa used it as a prison, making it a symbol of British authority over the area.

The various conflicting Swahili factions fought for the control of the Fort in order to re establish their control of the East African Coast. To them therefore, the Fort is a memento to the struggle for self-determination. In the Swahili Old town of Mombasa, the Fort with its massive walls is a landmark of social cohesion given a long history of political struggles.

8.1. Values

8.1.1. Historical values:

Firstly, it has had a long history of hostilities of the interested parties (Portuguese, Arabs, Swahili and the British) making it the early Fort in Africa, which has experienced such turbulence.

Secondly, the Fort is now an important historical landmark on the East Africa region as it served as the Portuguese base/headquarters through which they maintained their occupation on the region.

Lastly, on both national and local level, the Fort serves as a symbol of a long history of colonial occupation.

8.1.2. Architectural values:

Fort Jesus is an architectural landmark in the Old Town as it was built on coral rock with massive walls and other strong elements. It is one of the best examples in the world, of the 16th century Portuguese military architecture.
8.1.3. Educational values:

Fort Jesus possesses both educational and research values. It is studied and visited by schools from within Kenya and receives a number of students and scholars from around the world.

8.1.4. Social values:

The Fort serves as a venue for social functions such as wedding ceremonies, meetings, night shows and other social gatherings.

8.1.4. Economic values:

There are many organizations and individuals dependent on the Fort for income. These include NMK, Tour Operators, Tour Guides, local hotels, taxi operators, formal traders including shop owners, forex bureau and informal traders such as crafts dealers, ice cream sellers.

9.0. SWOT ANALYSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Strengths</th>
<th>Weakness</th>
<th>Opportunities</th>
<th>Threats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Funding</td>
<td>- Generates forex</td>
<td>- Inadequate funds</td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Kenya Tourism Board (KTB)</td>
<td>- Conditions set by donors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Major income earner for NMK</td>
<td>- Part of generated funds sustain other sites e.g. Jumba</td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Mombasa and Coast</td>
<td>- No diversification of earnings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Donor funding</td>
<td>- Generated money sustain other NMK activities</td>
<td>Tourism Association</td>
<td>- Declining Central Government funding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Coast Development Authority</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Friends of Fort Jesus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Attraction of donor funding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Potential for increased earnings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Development/strengthening commercial activities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>around the site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Proximity to CBD (Central Business District)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Good economical climate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tourism</td>
<td>- One of the major tourist attractions in</td>
<td>- Tourist trail unclear</td>
<td>- Fort Jesus within tourist circuit</td>
<td>- Low seasonal visitation (e.g. during rainy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mombasa</td>
<td>- Uncoordinated and un-informed tour guides (poor tour guide management)</td>
<td>- Availability of local tourist market</td>
<td>seasons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Tourists delight</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Increase in visitors (local and foreign)</td>
<td>- Competition from nearby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 2nd most visited</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legislation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of protection acts,</td>
<td>- Misuse of patent rights</td>
<td>- Prospects offered by re-drafting of Museums and</td>
<td>- “Fort Jesus” as a name not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site Management</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Site management structure in place</td>
<td>- Lack of assertive management from NMK</td>
<td>- Improve management strategies</td>
<td>- Inappropriate conservation techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- NMK employs security persons</td>
<td>- Management plan needs review</td>
<td>- Potential to develop a social meeting point around the site (coffee drinking, etc)</td>
<td>- Low participatory management by stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cleaning undertaken by Fort Jesus</td>
<td>- Lack of routine maintenance</td>
<td>- Improve site management by localising generated funds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Museum versus site museum identity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Poor state of conservation(rusting, flaking)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Museum visitors litter the Fort</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Inadequate security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Human Resource</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Human resource available</td>
<td>- Limited creativity</td>
<td>- Draw on in-house expertise</td>
<td>- Staff exodus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Trained management staff available</td>
<td>- Limited staff motivation</td>
<td>- Prospects offered by restructuring</td>
<td>- Nepotism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Competent human resource available</td>
<td>- Conflicting and problematic management structure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Promotion</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Strategic location</td>
<td>- Lack of marketing plan</td>
<td>- Advertising through agencies e.g. hotels, brochures, etc.</td>
<td>tourist sites E.g. Zanzibar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Long opening hours throughout the year</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Inscription on the WHL</td>
<td>- Decline of tourist industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Easy accessibility</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Site internationally known</td>
<td>- Vandalism by tourists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Fort on the internet</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Possibility of establishing marketing department</td>
<td>- Unlicensed tour guides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Time-to-time promotion undertaken</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Sound and Light shows at Fort Jesus and advertised on international flights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of Friends of Fort Jesus (e.g. newsletter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cultural site in Kenya</td>
<td>- Spectacular scenery</td>
<td>- Local public attraction</td>
<td>- Tour Guides identify themselves with Fort Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Availability of tourism training college</td>
<td>- Existence of tourist police unit</td>
<td>- Direct flights to Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Good tourist infrastructure</td>
<td>- Willing tourist public</td>
<td>- Tour guides speak different foreign languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Lack of marketing plan</td>
<td>- Advertising through agencies e.g. hotels, brochures, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Limited creativity</td>
<td>- Inscription on the WHL</td>
<td>- Site internationally known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Limited staff motivation</td>
<td>- Possibility of establishing marketing department</td>
<td>- Sound and Light shows at Fort Jesus and advertised on international flights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Conflicting and problematic management structure</td>
<td>- Staff exodus expertise</td>
<td>- Nepotism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Draw on in-house expertise</td>
<td>- Prospects offered by restructuring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Improve management strategies</td>
<td>- Potential to develop a social meeting point around the site (coffee drinking, etc)</td>
<td>- Low participatory management by stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Inappropriate conservation techniques</td>
<td>- Improve site management by localising generated funds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Improving management techniques</td>
<td>- Inadequate security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Low participatory management by stakeholders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heritage and Museum Act. - Declared National Monument - Double protection</td>
<td>heritage Bill</td>
<td>patented</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Structure</strong> - A durable structure - Important landmark in Old Town - Site is structurally sound - Unique floor plan (shape) - One of the few 16th c. Portuguese military architecture still surviving - Insufficient drainage - Poor drainage system - Lack of maintenance plan - Prospects/chances to survive many years to come</td>
<td>- Erosion of the site - Climatic effects on building materials (humidity, sea moisture, wind, salty air)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education and Research</strong> - Fort Jesus is studied in schools throughout Kenya - Existence of an educational department at Fort Jesus - Site shared and linked to other Swahili Culture on the East Coast - High number of student visitors - Reservoir of knowledge on earlier European occupation in Africa - Linkage with Old Town - Historical significance - Insufficient outreach programmes - Insufficient public awareness - Insufficient resources (e.g. transportation, fund, etc.) - Lack of teacher’s packages - Prospects for increased school visits - Re-enforcement of classroom message - Research potentials - Internship for scholars - Museum re-enforce what is taught in schools - Availability of traditional know-how</td>
<td>- Lack of focus on educational programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Site Presentation</strong> - Existence of parking facilities - Existence of tour guides - Existence of educational department - Sound and Light Show - Inadequate presentation and interpretation - Not enough signage - Monuments versus Museum - Presentation crisis - Interpretation of site not properly co-</td>
<td>- Upgrade and develop facilities (Customer care, etc.) - Proposal for site interpretation improvement available - Activating the surrounding</td>
<td>- Risk of too much commercialisation - Low carrying capacity of the site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Social Environment | - Venue for social gathering | - No communication strategies between stakeholders | - Good political will  
|                    |                           |                                                   | - Friendly neighbourhood Willingness of Old Town Community to get involved  
|                    |                           |                                                   | - Old community for living culture  
|                    |                           |                                                   | - Security of site (especially during night ceremonies)  
|                    |                           |                                                   | - Vagrancy around the site  

### 10.0. GUIDING PRINCIPLES

Fort Jesus is the best-known surviving example of 16th century Portuguese military architecture. Constructed in 1593 to safeguard both Portuguese possessions on East African coast and the East trade, the Fort has been at the centre of conflicts between rival colonial powers of its history. To this end it bears scars from each of its successive masters.

Given its long and enduring history, the Fort and its immediate surroundings deserve to be protected in total for the enjoyment of both present and future generations. However, there is a need to establish synergies between presentation efforts and the site itself so as to better provide visitors with an experience of the past thereby revealing its full cultural significance. In order to achieve these, the following are hereby proposed:

- The presentation and interpretation of Fort Jesus should re-contextualize the monument and its associated landscape and structures, as an embodiment of Kenya’s specific place in the history of the human struggle against domination, quest for economic supremacy and the complex human relations that resulted from that.
- Adopt partnership and transparency in the management and monitoring of activities to encourage all willing parties to confidently contribute to positive changes.
- Ensure the conservation of the site through regular scheduled inspection and maintenance.
- Re-structure and streamline the existing management system in order to have a clear reporting and conservation mechanism on the site.
- Develop and implement a comprehensive and aggressive marketing plan to properly promote the site to both local and international markets.
- Improve the visitor experience through thematic and thematic displays.
- Identify and develop programmes that generate revenue for conservation and gradual maintenance.
- Undertake fundraising activities in partnership with communities for the conservation and development of the site.
- Maintain a highly motivated workforce through regular reviews of conditions of service.
11.0. STRATEGIC PLAN

11.1. Management

Given the weakness and threats observed from discussions with both staff and stakeholders, it can be concluded that some of the key challenges are to respond to the demands and needs of customers. This will require establishing appropriate structures, developing adequate capacity and improving management and coordination for efficient delivery of services.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Management       | - Review the draft management plan done September 2001 by Africa 2009 participants.  
                   - Mobilize stakeholder’s participation.  
                   - Conduct periodic staff appraisals.  
                   - Conduct regular reviews of staff condition of service.  
                   - Encourage monthly staff meetings.  
                   - Implement the NMK organizational structure and establish a report back mechanism | - Draw up a site presentation and interpretation plan.  
                                                                                   - Improve participatory management system  
                                                                                   - Nominate site for World Heritage Listing  
                                                                                   - Training of Tour Guides  
                                                                                   - Staff training | - Evaluation and Monitoring  
                                                                                   - Attract and Maintain highly motivated staff |

11.2. Establishing Sustainable Funding System

There is also a need to revamp key functional areas of conservation, interpretation and presentation, research, marketing and infrastructure to be able to respond to the changing environment and meet the expectations of the customers. Other areas that need to be pursued include fundraising, revenue and donor support. Presently, the Government of Kenya covers about 40-50% of total NMK costs, which is about Kshs. 28 million each month, and revenue
covers about 20% and the rest from donors to various projects. The main focus here will be on the locally generated funding which would be more sustainable in the long run.

The Fort has high prospects of generating more income by way of increasing and diversifying its income base. Diversified activities could include selling of indigenous crafts and foodstuffs from within the fort. The museum has an option to hire out the cafeteria to an independent contractor so as to improve the quality of services. The sound and light show needs to be advertised and viewed by a larger audience than is currently the case. There is need to construct descent stalls for the vendors operating from within the museum premises and collect rent from such activities. Hawkers trading on museum grounds also should be levied.

Collaboration with development partners and stakeholders on the way forward on financing and implementation will be strengthened.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Establish a Sustainable Funding System | - Create a financial/accounting system  
- Set up a fund raising committee  
- Draw terms of reference  
- Draw a fund raising programme  
- Prepare project proposals for funding  
- Expand income generating activities in and around the Fort | - Carry out fund raising activities  
- Hold regular meetings  
- Publicize fund raising programme  
- Hold stakeholder report back meetings | - Increase and maintain donor funding  
- Distribute funding to other sites |

11.3. Site Presentation and interpretation

Though the fort is the second most visited site in Kenya, its presentation and interpretation is in dire need of improvement. The current presentation lacks a clear trail and hardly gives a visitor a full experience of fort life. In addition, the fort lacks in thematic presentations.

The Fort is currently faced with the problem of museum visit. The current museum despite being located at the center of the trail also houses collections alien to the Fort and whose
interpretation does not fit in the story of the Fort. Interpretation facilities are inadequate and
the site does not have a visitor center. There will be need to assess the presentation and
interpretation needs of the site followed by preparation of a presentation and interpretation
plan, which will have to be implemented in the medium term.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Site Presentation and Interpretation | - Carry out site presentation and interpretation needs  
- Draw site presentation and interpretation plan | - Lay out tourist trails  
- Improve site interpretative signage  
- Co-ordinate tour guides  
- Upgrade visitor facilities | - Develop visitor facilities |

### 11.4 Conservation Works

The site is generally in good condition, especially after the recent restoration works carried out
on the exterior walls. Site pathological studies revealed that some areas of the Fort including
restored ones are fast degrading and the effects of the change of sea levels due to global
environmental charges have also started to undermine the coral that forms the base of the Fort. There will be need to urgently draw up rehabilitation and restoration plans that will
address the problems observed. A maintenance plan also needs to be drawn and implemented
for the regular maintenance of the site.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conservation Works</td>
<td>- Draw up a rehabilitation/restoration plan</td>
<td>- Prepare project proposals including budget estimates for conservation works</td>
<td>- Regular inspection and maintenance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.5. Promotion and Tourism

Though the Fort is a “must see site” for visitors to Mombasa, there is currently no marketing
strategy by NMK. Many hotels lack information about the Fort on their information desks. The
site, however, is on internet and there are individual efforts by a number of operators to
market the Fort. These include those by the operators of the sound and light show. The Fort
also is affected by general downward trends in the tourist market necessitated by negative publicity. There will, therefore, be need to draw and implement a vigorous marketing strategy and to establish cooperative links with various tour operators and airlines for the purpose of attracting more visitors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tourism and Promotion</td>
<td>- Establish cooperative links tour agencies</td>
<td>- Produce and erect signage</td>
<td>- Update website \</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Draw up a marketing plan</td>
<td>- Production of brochures, newsletters and magazines</td>
<td>- Increase site publicity through continuous distribution of more publicized materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Set up a marketing/tourism committee</td>
<td>- Launch promotional materials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Distribute promotional materials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Organize and carry out talk shows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Carry out drama performances</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**11.6. Education and Research**

The Fort receives good patronage from schools, colleges. It also attracts a sizeable number of researchers from Universities within and outside Kenya. Though the Fort has an education department, its operations are hampered by logistical problems such as lack of transport. In addition, its audiovisual equipment is constantly alternates between PMDA and the Museum, thereby hampering the department’s operations. A number of areas have also not been researched. Among them are topics related to the daily past life inside the Fort and the Forts’ relationship with the Old Town Community. The department needs to come up with education and research programmes to address some of the problems mentioned.
### 12.0 Action Plan.

While a number of conservation and management issues were raised in 2001 most of them have or are being addressed. At the National level a whole Directorate of Development and Corporate Affairs has been established and has been working to develop an Institutional marketing and development strategy for National Museums of Kenya. This will be concluded soon ready for implementation.

At the local level, two workshops were organized that gathered tour guides, representatives from the Ministry of Tourism and the Tourist Police to discuss areas that required improvement to satisfy visitor needs.

Tour guiding trails are being established starting around the Fort. Sitting benches will be provided at some places along the trails.

However, the weightiest issues that this revised plan focus affecting both the conservation and management of the site and demands immediate attention are: the effects of both sub-florescence and efflorescence to the wall rendering of the Fort caused by salty air; erosion of the coral that forms the base of Fort Outwork caused by the changes in the tidal currents aggressively undermining its stability; and the exhibition, presentation and interpretation of the Fort.

### Table: Conservation Work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Education and Research | - Identify areas for further research  
- Design out-reach programmes  
- Identify education needs  
- Draw up educational programmes | - Conduct workshops for teachers  
- Increase public education | - Implement out-reach programmes |

### Table: Activities and Success Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Indicator of Success</th>
<th>Person or Institution Responsible</th>
<th>Partners</th>
<th>Estimated Cost in KSHS</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Draw up a maintenance Plan.</td>
<td>Maintenance plan available</td>
<td>MOTCO and Chief Curator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>By March 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Implementation Details</td>
<td>责任人</td>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>By/Finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement the Maintenance Plan</td>
<td>Engage the services of marine Engineer to study the effects of the tidal currents on the coral and come up with appropriate remedies</td>
<td>Maintenance Plan implemented including addressing the problems of sub-florescence and efflorescence</td>
<td>Marine Engineer’s Report available.</td>
<td>Kshs. 2m.</td>
<td>By June 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement Marine Engineer’s Report</td>
<td>Implement Marine Engineer’s Report</td>
<td>Marine Engineer’s report implemented</td>
<td>Chief Curator, MOTCO, Kenya Ports Authority, Ministry of Public Works and Consulting Firm.</td>
<td>Kshs. 300,000</td>
<td>By June 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhibition, Presentation and Interpretation</td>
<td>Implement the exhibition, presentation and interpretation Plan</td>
<td>Exhibition, presentation and interpretation plan implemented</td>
<td>Chief Curator, Public Programmes, Coast Archaeology and MOTCO, Consultants</td>
<td>Kshs. 5m.</td>
<td>By June 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Donor Community and Stakeholders</td>
<td>Kshs. 5m.</td>
<td>By 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.0. Monitoring and Evaluation

The implementation of this plan is subject to constant monitoring of all activities implemented. This will be for the purpose of noting progress according to schedules and problems of implementation.

This plan will be subject to periodic evaluations every five years.
APPENDIX

List of Stakeholders

References

Questionnaires
LIST OF STAKEHOLDERS

- National Museum of Kenya (NMK)
- Friends of Fort Jesus
- Wamiji Foundation
- Programme for Museum Development in Africa
- Kishesho
- Ndiakuu kibokoni
- Chief Old Town
- Tour guides
- District Development Officer
- Coast Development Authority
- Mombasa Municipal Council (Town Planner and Environment, Health and Sanitary Officer)
- Swahili Cultural Centre
- Fort Jesus Museum Board
- Pambaroho Football Club
- Provincial Physical Planning Officer
- District Development Officer
- Mombasa and Coast Tourist Association
- Kenya Association of Tour Operators
- Taxi Drivers
REFERENCES


Kirkman, James, S. “Fort Jesus: A Portuguese Fort on the East African Coast”, Oxford, 1974

Jowell, Johan H. A. “Mombasa the Friendly Town” Nairobi Printing and Packaging Corporation Ltd. 1976.

Michael Haynes : “Fort Jesus: An interpretive study ”, University of Newcastle Upon Tyne , 2001


Dear visitor,

This questionnaire intends to assist us prepare management plan for Fort Jesus national monument. We thank you for filling it and wish you a nice stay in Mombasa.

How did you known about the Fort Jesus?

- Magazine
- Guide
- Tourist/ other visitors
- From a friend
- Travel agency
- Web site
- In your Hotel
- Other

What was the main reason of your visit to the site?

- Cultural Tourism
- Visiting a national
- Recreation
- Part of a tour
- Just passing through

Does the site correspond to what you imagined?

- Yes
- No
- If no, why: 

Access to the site and presentation:

What do you think about Visitors facilities?

- Insufficient
- medium
- Good

What do you think about Information panels on site?

- Insufficient
- medium
- Good

Which part of the Fort

- bastions
- captain’s house
- burial
- museum
- walls

Excited you most?

What do you think about the site conservation and cleanliness?

- Very poor
- bad
- OK
- good
- Excellent

What services are missing most (2 choices maximum)

- Drinking Place
- Live traditional ceremonies
- Book shop
- Interpretation centre
- Curios
Was our staff welcoming/informative?

At the shops and the reception: Poor ☐ Satisfactory ☐ Good ☐
During the guided visit: Poor ☐ Satisfactory ☐ Good ☐

What do you think about the entree fee?

Cheap ☐ Affordable ☐ Expensive ☐

Are you ready to:

Visit again Yes ☐ No ☐
Recommend the site to friends Yes ☐ No ☐

Other remarks / comments or suggestions:

________________________________________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________________________________________
NOMINATION PROPOSAL
FORT JESUS, MOMBASA

2011
REPUBLIC OF KENYA
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>State Party</strong></th>
<th>KENYA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>State, Province or Region</strong></td>
<td>COAST PROVINCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name of Property</strong></td>
<td>FORT JESUS, MOMBASA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Geographical coordinates to the nearest second</strong></td>
<td>Located between Latitude 3 S 55° 4 S 10° and Longitude 39 E 35° 39 E 45°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Textual description of the boundary (ies) of the nominated property</strong></td>
<td>The Fort is situated on a knoll North East of Mombasa Island. It is bound by the Indian Ocean’s Tudor channel to the East. To the North it is bordered by Mombasa Club and the Mazrui Cemetery. On the West it borders the Old Law Courts and the Mombasa Municipal Council buildings. While to the South it is bordered by Swahili Cultural Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attach A4 (or “letter”) size Map</strong></td>
<td>SEE PAGE 8 BELOW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Justification Statement of Outstanding Universal Value</strong></td>
<td>Fort Jesus, Mombasa is an exceptional symbol of the interchange of cultural values and influences between and among peoples, of African, Arab, Asians, Turkish, Persian and European origin, whose lives have been touched by the presence and role of this imposing structure. Built by the Portuguese at the end of the 16th Century and used by them for over 100 years, Fort Jesus Mombasa bears testimony to the first successful attempt by western civilization to control the Indian Ocean trade routes which had remained under Eastern influence over several millennia. The Fort was used by various world powers as a stronghold to safeguard their interests along the East African coast. In this way Fort Jesus, Mombasa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
was at the centre of the then emerging political, commercial and cultural globalization. In the process the Fort experienced conflicts and contestations. However, unlike many other Forts where contestation was usually between European powers, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was a source of conflict between diverse peoples and powers that converged there. Given this long and enduring history, distinctive architectural design and development, Fort Jesus Mombasa encompasses unique fort features as well as an important historical development that came to define and shape the relations between the East and the West.

Fort Jesus Mombasa remarkably exemplifies the ‘new thinking’ of Renaissance military architecture in 15th C Europe. Designed by the great Italian Military architect, Joao Batista Cairato, it took the form of a human body that was regarded as the most perfect of God’s creations. This reasoning was characteristic of the Renaissance and was a base of the architectural theory of the age. No other fortress best illustrates the relationship to the human body more clearly than Fort Jesus, Mombasa. This layout as simple as it appeared ensured complete protection of the Fort. It provided for the widest angle of firing range and cover against any incoming enemy attack.

The construction of the Fort deliberately exploited the local geological formation consisting of massive pure coral. The lower parts of the defences are made of solid coral cut back to the line of the walls, but more pronounced on the western side. The original defence on the landward sides consists of a 4.27 metres thick wall, comprising a parapet nearly 2.75 metres wide and 1 metre high, backed by a parapet walk and firing step. The Fort was impregnable; in its 200 years experience of bombardment and nine attempts of takeover, only once was this successful through deceit by scaling the walls. Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the best surviving 16th century Portuguese military fortification of its kind in the world.

The Fort Jesus design influenced the conceptualisation and improvement of other
Portuguese forts such as El mina Castle, St. Georges and others. To the present the fort remains a landmark of social cohesion given its use by people of diverse cultures whilst still retaining its many characteristics of fort or seat of power, military installation, prison and now a monument and museum.

The Fort in its over 400 years of existence has remained unchanged in its general design and layout throughout the various periods of occupation and use, therefore maintaining its integrity and authenticity. It is a gazetted monument under the National Museums and Heritage Act, and is managed by the National Museums of Kenya, the custodian of the country’s heritage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria under which property is nominated (itemize criteria)</th>
<th>Fort Jesus, Mombasa is proposed to be inscribed in the World Heritage List as a Cultural Site under criteria ii and iv.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Criteria (ii)</strong></td>
<td>Exhibit an important interchange of human values, over a span of time or within a cultural area of the world, on developments in architecture or technology, monumental arts, town-planning or landscape design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Criteria (iv)</strong></td>
<td>Be an outstanding example of a type of building, architectural or technological ensemble or landscape which illustrates significant stages in human history</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Name and contact information of official local institution/agency | The National Museums of Kenya  
P.O. Box 40658 - 00100,  
Nairobi, Kenya  
Tel: 254-20-3742161-4/254-20-3742131-4  
Fax: 254-20-3741424  
Email: dgnmk@museums.or.ke  
Web site: www.museums.or.ke |
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY ................................................................. 6
   1.a: Country (and State Party if different) .......................................................... 6
   1.b: State, Province or Region ........................................................................ 6
   1.c: Name of Property .................................................................................. 6
   1.d: Geographical coordinates ..................................................................... 6
   1.e: Maps and plans, showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone ................................................................. 8
   1.f: Area of nominated property (ha) and proposed buffer zone (ha) .......... 10

2. DESCRIPTION .................................................................................................... 12
   2.a: Description of Property ........................................................................... 12
   2.b: History and Development ....................................................................... 14

3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION ............................................................... 21
   3.a: Criteria under which inscription is proposed (and justification for inscription under these criteria) .......................................................... 22
   3.b: Proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value ............................ 23
   3.c: Comparative analysis (including state of conservation of similar properties) ............................ 24
   3.d: Integrity and/or Authenticity .................................................................. 31

4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE PROPERTY .......... 33
   4.a: Present state of conservation .................................................................. 33
   4.b: Factors affecting the property ................................................................ 34

5. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE PROPERTY ............................... 35
   5.a: Ownership ............................................................................................ 35
   5.b: Protective designation .......................................................................... 35
   5.c: Means of implanting protective measures ........................................... 36
   5.d: Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located ............................................................... 36
   5.e: Property management plan or other management system ...................... 36
   5.f: Sources and levels of finance .................................................................. 36
   5.g: Sources of expertise and training in conservation and management techniques .................................................................................. 37
   5.h: Visitor facilities and statistics .................................................................. 37
   5.i: Policies and programmes related to the presentation and promotion of the property ................................................................. 37
   5.j: Staffing levels (professional, technical, maintenance) ............................ 38
### 6. MONITORING

- 6.a: Key indicators for measuring state of conservation ........................................ 40
- 6.b: Administrative arrangements for monitoring property ..................................... 40
- 6.c: Results of previous reporting exercises .......................................................... 40

### 7. DOCUMENTATION

- 7.a: Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials ........................................................................................................ 41
- 7.b: Texts relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans .................................................................................................................. 44
- 7.c: Form and date of most recent records or inventory of property ....................... 44
- 7.d: Address where inventory, records and archives are ........................................ 45
- 7.e: Bibliography ........................................................................................................ 46

### 8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF RESPONSIBLE AUTHORITIES

- 8.a..Preparer ............................................................................................................... 48
- 8.b..Official Local Institution/Agency ......................................................................... 49
- 8.c..Other Local Institutions ..................................................................................... 49
- 8.d..Official Web address .......................................................................................... 49

### 9. SIGNATURE OF BEHALF OF THE STATE PARTY

### 10. APPENDIXES

- Appendix 1. Management plan.................................................................................. 51
- Appendix 2. Responses to ICOMOS ........................................................................ 58
- Appendix 3. Legal texts ............................................................................................ 60
- Appendix 4. Photographs .......................................................................................... 63
- Appendix 5. Site Maps .............................................................................................. 64
- Appendix 6. Selected articles on Fort Jesus, Mombasa ........................................... 65
FORT JESUS, MOMBASA, (KENYA)

NOMINATION DOSSIER FOR INSCRIPTION ON THE WORLD HERITAGE LIST

1. IDENTIFICATION OF PROPERTY

1. a. Country

Republic of Kenya

1. b. State, Province or Region

Coast Province

1. c. Name of Property

Fort Jesus, Mombasa

1. d. Geographical coordinates to the nearest second

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is located between Latitude 3 S 55° 4 S 10° and Longitude 39 E 35° 39 E 45°.
Figure 1. Map of Kenya showing position of Mombasa
1. e. Plan and Map showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone
Figure 3. Map of Fort Jesus, Mombasa and the Buffer Zone
1. f. Area of nominated property (ha.) and proposed buffer zone (ha.)

**Area of nominated property:** 2.36 Hectares

**Buffer zone** 31 Hectares

**Total** 33.36 Hectares

*Figure 4. Artist engravings of Fort Jesus and Mombasa Island in 1872*
Figure 5. Ground Plan of Fort Jesus, Mombasa

LEGEND

A. Briefing areas
B. Passage of the archis
C. Ammunition store
D. Remains of Captain's house
E. Prison cells for women
F. Mazrui Hall
G. High wall
H. Gun Platform
I. Masket holes
J. Battlement holes
K. Entrance to the old harbour
L. Portuguese wreck
M. Sea
N. Bastion of St. Mateus
O. Major gun platform
P. Watch tower over the harbour and entrance
Q. Portuguese flag post
R. Portuguese wall paintings
S. Site Museum (formerly barracks)
T. Remains of Portuguese chapel
U. Portuguese water system
V. 0 mani Arab's VALL
W. B. barracks Stores
X. Parapet Wall
Y. Portuguese Pit Latrine
Z. Remains of Portuguese skeleton

Tourist trail

AA. 0 mani Arab House (upstairs)
AB. Model of British Trolley and track
AC. Remains of Portuguese soldiers' barracks
AD. 01 gunpowder store (upstairs)
BB. Arabs flag post
BC. Portuguese Open Court
BD. Friends of Fort Jesus office
CC. Curator's house
CD. Ticket office
DD. Inner gate
DE. Administration office
DF. Small drinks shop (upstairs)
DG. Café
DH. Curator's office
EE. Kitchen
EF. Storage
EG. Rooms
EH. Maintenance section
FF. Storage
FG. Main gate
FH. Toilets (formerly part of barracks)
GG. Lawn
GH. Restricted area
GI. Parking lot
GJ. Monument
HH. Shed
HL. Drains
HJ. Footpath
HK. Football field
HL. Magazine cavalier (below)
2. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY

2. a Description of Property
Fort Jesus, Mombasa is located in the city of Mombasa on the east coast of Kenya. Mombasa is one of the oldest port cities on the coast of East Africa and was re-knowned for its beautiful architecture as recorded by the great Arab traveller Ibn Battuta in 1331 A.D. Located in middle of the western Indian sea coast, Mombasa occupied a strategic location as trade and military matters were concerned in the western Indian Ocean. It became a major trade port used by traders from Asia, Arabia and the East in exotic and other goods. Mombasa therefore attracted the attention of powers that wanted to have a share of the Indian Ocean trade and the Portuguese were not an exception. To control this part of the world and the trade routes to Asia, they decided to build a fort in Mombasa.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa, was designed by an Italian architect and engineer Giovanni Battista Cairati (Joao Baptista Cairato), who was a leading military architect of the day and a protégé of King Philip II of Spain. Designed in a human form that is regarded as the most perfect of God’s creations the fortress had to aim at a similar functional and formal perfection. This reasoning was characteristic of the Renaissance and was a base of the architectural theory of the age.

The plan of the Fort consists of a central court with bastions in the four corners and a rectangular gun platform facing the sea. It was designed in such a way that it was virtually impregnable during any siege and it included basic facilities such as chapel, cistern, well and Captain’s house all covering an area of two acres. All these except the cistern and the L-shaped building in S. Matias were destroyed in the course of the 18th Century and are now survived by ruins. The Fort has one main gate and two other passages facing the sea. Other features include parapet walks, firing steps, watchtowers and gun ports. There were barrack rooms on the north and south sides and guardrooms leading back from the main gate. The re-entrant angles of the two landward bastions in which cannons were placed to sweep the face of the opposite bastion stand out clearly.

The flanks of the landward bastions, S. Filipe (north) and S. Alberto (south), are made with deep re-entrant angles where they face each other to provide screened gun positions. The other flanks and the landward flanks of the seaward bastions, S. Matias (north) and S. Mateus (south) are square without re-entrant angles. The flanks of these bastions, S. Matias and S. Mateus are swept back to provide the widest possible field of the gunfire. The north and south faces of the rectangular projection are covered by the seaward bastions, but the main face, the east wall, was protected only by the guns of the outwork in front of it.

The Main Gate is in the lee of S. Matias, covered by the eastern flank of S. Filipe, and was reached by a wooden gangway (now filled with sand to create a bridge) across the ditch. Above it is the gatehouse, consisting of an upper and lower room. There were two subsidiary gates in the east wall of the projection (one is now blocked), reached from the central court by a sloping passage of the Arches and by a flight of the steps (the Passage of the Steps) and a third in the eastern wall of S. Mateus (which is also
The purpose of the subsidiary gates was to provide access to the Fort for supplies landed by sea, and also to communicate with the outwork below the front of the projection.

The original defence on the landward sides consists of a 4.27 metres thick wall, comprising a parapet nearly 2.75 metres wide and 1 metre high, backed by a parapet walk and firing step. Later, walls were built on top of the old parapets so that the height was increased by 3 metres. The lower parts of the defences are made of solid coral cut back to the line of the walls, but more pronounced on the western side. A dry moat surrounds three sides of the Fort which was necessitated by the dangerously rising slope of the ground beyond S. Filipe and S. Alberto. The height of the scarp is about 17 metres including the moat which is about 5 metres deep and 5 metres wide and surrounds the fortress on the landward sides. Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a good deal above sea level and the dry moat has its advantages such as allowing greater protection during a retreat.

The original materials used in the construction of the Fort are coral, lime, sand and clay. The facades have been finished with a pigmented yellow ochre plaster. The Fort has managed to retain much of its features since its construction in the 16th century.

![Figure 6. A 1950 aerial photo showing the various features of Fort Jesus, Mombasa](image)

**Recent use of the Fort**

During the colonial period the Fort was converted into an administrative centre and later into prison. Additional buildings to serve this purpose were constructed inside the fort. These included the kitchen and a hangman’s drop that was made against the re-entrant angle. Later a site museum, Conservation laboratory and an administration
block were built on the old foundations of the barracks on the south eastern side of the central courtyard while on the north western part of the courtyard an ablution block was added.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa was officially opened to the public in 1960 and is currently both a Monument and Museum, attracting hundreds of thousands of both local and foreign tourists annually. It also serves as the Regional Headquarters for coastal museums and sites. In addition it is a popular site for social functions such as, wedding ceremonies, meetings, festivals and is host to a sound and light show. Further, the immediate surroundings of the fort are used by the Mombasa community for relaxation, sport, formal and informal trade. The moat is currently used as a car/bus parking area for visitors to the Fort.

2. b. History and Development

![Figure 7. Entrance to Fort Jesus, Mombasa and view across the Tudor Channel in 1800s](image)

The East African Coast between Somalia and Mozambique has for centuries been inhabited by people of various backgrounds. Most of the Bantu speaking groups arrived in the area between A.D. 500 and 800 having come from the south. By about A.D. 1000, they had been joined by Arabs who came from Asia to settle along the coastal areas of East Africa. Independent city states such as Lamu, Mombasa, Malindi, Pemba, Kilwa and Zanzibar flourished along the coast. These Coastal settlements traded in gold, silk, ivory and skins with traders from as far as Persia, Arabia, Syria, India and even China. Some of the settlements grew more powerful than others.

The difference in wealth, and the resultant competition for control of the trade led to rivalries and even wars. For a long time Kilwa was the most important and most prosperous settlement on the coast. However, by 1490, its prosperity had begun to decline and was slowly giving way to Mombasa. Mombasa was founded about the same time with a rival settlement of Malindi, further north and prosperity of Mombasa brought fierce rivalries between it and city states including Malindi, Lamu and Pate.

**Building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa**

From the first half of the 2nd Millennium, A.D. the Portuguese had developed navigational facilities that would take them to the world’s high seas. Portugal, which
had been interested in finding a sea route to the East Indies, made the first successful attempt at the end of the 15th Century. A Portuguese sailor, Vasco da Gama passed through the Cape of Good Hope in 1497, reaching India in 1498. En route he passed through a number of ports and towns in Mozambique, Tanzania, Kenya and Somalia. Vasco da Gama, found most of these towns divided. He, however, noted their prosperous and commercial life; good harbours where merchant ships to India could refuel. During this first journey, he was received with mixed reactions with some ports welcoming him and others not. For instance, while Mombasa was hostile towards the Portuguese, Malindi on the other hand welcomed them and became their initial base on the East African coast.

Before the coming of the Portuguese however, a number of foreigners had entrenched themselves at the coast and were actively involved with the local people in the trans-Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese had to break into the market and compete with these already established groups such as the Oman Arabs. This involved confrontations and ruthless takeovers of towns such as Mombasa and Kilwa that offered open resentment and unwillingness to pay tribute to Portugal. By 1509, the Portuguese had managed to take control of the area between Sofala, in Mozambique in the south and Socrata in the northern part of the East African coast.

In 1585, Turkey began taking interest on the coast, plundering and forcing various settlements to come under her control. Ali Bey, a Turkish pirate built a fort in Mombasa facing the Indian Ocean, and called it Ras Serani and began conspiring with the local people to drive the Portuguese out of Mombasa.

In order to consolidate their hold on the coast, the Portuguese Captain to the Coast, Mateus Mendes de Vasconcelos, then based at Malindi, was instructed to take his fleet to Mombasa and build a fortress. Initially Portuguese recaptured Ras Serani Fort rehabilitated it and renamed it Fort St. Joseph but this was not strategically positioned in relation to the harbour. Therefore in 1593, the Portuguese began to build a fortress in Mombasa at its present location that was to be called Fort Jesus, Mombasa. Fort Jesus, Mombasa became the new Portuguese Headquarters on the East African Coast and had a permanent garrison of a hundred soldiers. Other supporting forts of less magnitude were built on the island of Mombasa. Ruins of some of them are still visible around Mama Ngina Drive Heritage Site located about 1.5 kilometres south of the Fort and Makupa 3 kilometres to the west.

The building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa attracted Portuguese settlers and traders in large numbers never witnessed before in the region. Fort Jesus, Mombasa therefore bears testimony to the first successful attempt by Western civilization to stamp its authority on an area that had remained under trade influence of the East over several millennia. Towards the end of the 16th century English and Dutch joined the competition for control of the Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese with limited men and ships began to find it impossible to keep a check on their Arab and Turkish enemies while at the same time having to watch for rival English and Dutch ships.
Taking advantage of declining Portuguese control, the Omani Arabs began to raid the Portuguese possessions on the East African Coast, beginning in 1652. By 1678, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was the only remaining stronghold of Portuguese power on the northern part of the East African Coast. The Portuguese were finally expelled from the fort, in December 1698 by the Omanis after a 33-month siege. The siege is known in history as the most remarkable event during the long Portuguese occupation of the East African Coast displaying the bravery of the Captain and his men during many months of bombardment, hunger and plague. Despite repeated attempts to recapture it, it was not until 1728 that the Portuguese managed to re-occupy it but only for 18 months.

The defeat of the Portuguese left the Omani Arabs in charge of the coastal settlements until the area was colonized by the British in 1885. Once under British rule, the fort was used as a prison until 1958 when it was declared a National Park, subsequently becoming a national monument and a museum. It still serves this function to date.

**Name Fort Jesus, Mombasa**
The Fort owes its name to the history of religious rivalry between the Christians and Muslims in Europe. During the 14th and 15th centuries Europe was devastated by war and schism that divided the states at that time. Social unrest was so rife that the Turks and Arabs took advantage of the situation to advance their religion in the Mediterranean regions of Africa and Europe. On seeing the whole Christianity under threat, the King of Portugal Dom Henry conceived a plan of action that would avoid further attacks from Muslims. He therefore instituted a new military order - the Order of Christ, to fight against the Moors (Muslims). Christianity was now enshrined in the structure of the state; it was the responsibility of the Kings to enforce the Christian faith upon the people through state machinery. When the Portuguese arrived in Mombasa, they encountered the Arabs and this was reminiscent of the Muslim domination back at home. They believed the only way to counter Muslim domination and any other threat from non-Christian quarters was by enforcing the Military Order of Christ. Consequently, after the Turks attacked the Portuguese at Mombasa in 1585, Viceroy Matias de Albuquerque of Goa ordered Captain Mateus Mendes de Vasconcelos to construct a Fort and call it Jesus of Mombasa.

**Fort Jesus, Mombasa and Mombasa Old Town**
Fort Jesus, Mombasa and Mombasa Old Town are interrelated but each has its own distinct history. The Fort was built at a strategic location to protect the town from seaward attackers. Historical accounts of Old Town before the construction of Fort Jesus, Mombasa describe the Mombasa Old Town as being characterised by lofty and old houses along narrow streets inhabited by African populations. The Fort was built at the beginning of two long and narrow streets known as Ndia Kuu and Mbarak Hinawy. One street connects the Fort to the port and another continues to the end of the Old Town.

The relationship of the Fort and the Old Town in terms of town planning has largely remained unchanged to this date. The Fort has been a significant symbol of the interchange of cultural values and influences between the African and western civilisations which are still visible in Mombasa Old Town today.
Construction Phases

Phase I: 1593
The actual construction of the original Fort started in 1593.

Phase II: 1634-1639
As a result of a revolt in 1631, recommendations for new works on the Fort were made in Goa in April 1633. The following improvements were made in the period between 1634 and 1639; curtain walls were made on the landward side without gun-ports, except in the north wall facing the town. The gaps between S. Alberto and S. Filipe and the west curtain wall were filled with a heavy roll-moulding made to screen the junction of wall and the coral face. The floors of the three bastions of S. Alberto, S. Filipe and S. Matias were raised with a filling of coral chips and red earth of the level of the old parapets, and new walls with 1.22 metres wide gun-ports were built on top of them in S. Alberto and S. Matias.

The west face of S. Matias was extended in the form of an elliptical bastion. An outer gate which led to the older gate by a covered passage way was made between the extension and the northern curtain walls, S. Mateus bastion was protected on the seaward side by a 3.96 metres wide gun-platform. Another platform was built on the landward side with two gun-ports covering the east face of S. Alberto and the south curtain wall. Angel towers were built at the junction of the rectangular projection and the seaward bastions. The approach to the Main gate was commanded by two gun-ports in the east face of S. Filipe. Two cavaliers were constructed in the landward bastions to cover the approaches from Kilindini and from Makupa, the ford of the Zimba.

Phase III: The Fort after the Great Siege of 1696-1698
During the great siege of 1696 the Captain’s house was badly damaged and when the Oman Arabs took over the Fort they undertook various works. The area occupied by the outer rooms was filled to the level of the top of the Portuguese walls to make a broad platform, protected by musket slits and gun ports. The door leading through a guardroom to the main court was blocked.

Phase IV: The Fort as a Prison 1895 - 1958
The original prison comprised the east end of the court including S. Matias and S. Mateus and the baraza. Other sections of the Fort were used as barracks for the security forces and temporary accommodation of the Provincial Medical Officer and other government officials. The 1954 plan of the Fort shows an extended prison. The long room on the south side of the court was made into a line cell of Asians prisoners while the Arab House was used as warders’ quarters and finally as the carpentry workshop. Another line of cells was built on the gun platform of the projection. The house on the top of the cavalier in S. Alberto became a store. A hangman’s drop was made against the re-entrant angle. The house on the cavalier of S. Filipe became the quarters of the chief warder and the prison office. The two houses in the projection were converted into the tailor’s workshop.
The open veranda on the 1899 plan was replaced with a washroom and lavatory at the north end and later converted into stores. The houses in S. Filipe and against the north curtain wall on the 1899 plan were cleared away and three cells created against the curtain. The rooms over the gate became warden’s quarters. In S. Matias the L-Shaped house was used as the night warden’s quarters and then as a juvenile prison. A flight of steps was built from the lower to the level of the bastion and here, a hospital, dispensary and latrine were constructed.

Phase V: 1958 – Present
In 1958 Fort Jesus, Mombasa was declared a historical monument by the colonial government of Kenya. Since then a number of studies and excavations have taken place to reconstruct the history of the Fort. In these excavations a number of artifacts including ceramics both local earthenware and imported ware from China, India, Persia, Portugal, England and other places in Europe and Asia, glass, coins and cannon and cannon balls were found. In the same year with funding from the Gulbenkian Calouste Foundation of Portugal restoration of Fort Jesus, Mombasa was restored as a historical monument and in 1960 a building to house a museum was built inside the Fort and the fort was opened to the public as a historic monument.

In 1976, three coronaries were moved to the battlements of the seaward projection and mounted in the gun points overlooking the harbour. Explanatory notices in English and Kiswahili (the local language) were placed near the guns giving an account of carronade and their uses, together with pictures of grape and canister shot such as might have been fired. External landscaping works at the entrance to the Fort were also undertaken. These works included concrete block paving of the entrance and construction of a protective “chain” fence.

In the same year a major underwater excavation in the shallows of Mombasa Harbour, below Fort Jesus, Mombasa to establish an identity of a wreck known to have existed, was sponsored by the Government of Kenya, the National Geographic Society, the Gulbenkian Foundation, the Institute of Nautical Archaeology and Western Maritime Museum of Australia.

Following another excavation with funding from the Omani Government one of the houses, now known as the Omani House on the Northwest corner of the Fort was restored, and a permanent exhibition with assemblage of artifacts depicting the culture and traditions of the Omani people was opened to the public. In 1992, the area in front of the museum within Fort Jesus, Mombasa was landscaped.

In 1993, Fort Jesus, Mombasa celebrated 400 years of existence. Donations from individuals both nationwide and worldwide made it possible to upgrade a number of areas in the Fort, including display and presentation of the Fort as a historical monument and paved the path approach towards the entrance gate of the Fort. In 2000, the National Museums of Kenya with a grant from the Gulbenkian Foundation of Portugal restored the exterior ramparts of the Fort landscaped the surrounding moat so that tours around the Fort could be introduced for visitors to appreciate the massive
walls structure and the relationship with their setting and also for installation of external lighting.

**Historical chronology**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1498</td>
<td>Portuguese reach Mombasa, but sail on to Malindi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1589</td>
<td>Turks build a small fort at Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1593</td>
<td>Portuguese pull out of Malindi, begin to build Fort Jesus, Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1631</td>
<td>Sultan of Mombasa stabs Portuguese captain, takes over the Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1632</td>
<td>Unsuccessful attempts by Portuguese to take over Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1632</td>
<td>Sultan’s nerve fails; he quits, Portuguese re-occupy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1661</td>
<td>Sultan of Oman sacks Mombasa, but fears to attack the Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1696</td>
<td>Sultan of Oman lays siege to the Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1697</td>
<td>Portuguese in the Fort die from starvation and plague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1698</td>
<td>Fort falls to Omani Arabs after 33 months siege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1728</td>
<td>Garrison mutinies against Arabs; Portuguese re-occupy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1729</td>
<td>Omani Arabs retake Fort; Portuguese leave the Fort for good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1741</td>
<td>Omani governor of the Fort, al-Mazrui, declares independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1746</td>
<td>Al-Mazrui murdered by Omani; his brother kills assassin &amp; becomes governor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1824</td>
<td>Al-Mazrui governor seeks and gets British protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1826</td>
<td>British protection withdrawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1828</td>
<td>Sultan of Oman &amp; Zanzibar (Seyyid Said) regains Fort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1833</td>
<td>Al-Mazrui forces in Fort withstand bombardment by Sultan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1837</td>
<td>The last Al-Mazrui governor submits to Sultan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1875</td>
<td>Fort bombarded by British ships to quell mutiny by Al-Akida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1895</td>
<td>Fort used as a government prison up to 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1958</td>
<td>Fort gazetted a National Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>The Fort was opened to the public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td>Fort was gazetted as a National Monument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Fort Jesus, Mombasa celebrated 400 years anniversary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 8. Images of early activities on the shores of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Portuguese castles and forts have been in existence since the 12th and 13th century AD when Portugal, the oldest Nation/State in Europe, declared its independence from Castile and Leon. Historically, while in the rest of Northern Europe and England many of the castles were still being made of wood, the Portuguese castles and forts were already made of stone. With the advent of artillery, most of these sophisticated castles and forts became outdated very suddenly, so new fortifications were built from the 15th century on.

Low structures with large star-shape walls were built to deflect the canon fire and give better spots to counter-attack with cross-fire. These new castles and forts were not only built in Portugal but all along the Empire, like in Africa, Asia and South-America. Most of them are however now in ruins today.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is an outstanding example of this “new style” of fortification. Fort Jesus, Mombasa improved on the existing fortress design by employing two symmetrical bastions to protect each other and hence provide the strongest continuous cross-fire for the very dangerous inland side. This was combined with a careful selection of the wall height so as not to exceed the range of the guns. The Fort’s forward bastions were bent to command as great an area as possible of the sea. It also had a defendable outer wall which also served to hide the interior buildings. Major part of the fort including the foundation was purely cut out of the existing coral rock and forms part of the natural landscape.

The fort had an advantage of a very deep moat that made the bastions look even bigger and making climbing attempts almost impossible. It is noteworthy that most Forts that did not benefit from this improved design as employed in Fort Jesus, Mombasa were destroyed such as Kilwa, in Tanzania and Makupa in Kenya.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is one of the best preserved and conserved Portuguese fortresses in Africa and which has had its general design unchanged throughout the various periods of occupation and use. The Fort therefore not only reflects the military architecture of the 16th century, but is also an important historical landmark in the history of Mombasa, colonial history of Kenya, the entire Eastern Coast of Africa and the trans-Indian Ocean trade.

The Fort was used by various world powers as a stronghold to safeguard their interests along the East African coast. In this way Fort Jesus, Mombasa has outstanding universal value of being at the centre of the then emerging globalization. Given this long and enduring history, unique architectural design and deployment, Fort Jesus, Mombasa brings in unique and important fort features as well as an important historical development that came to shape the relations between the East and the West; it indeed also compliments other similar properties on the World Heritage List.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a significant symbol of the interchange of cultural values and influences between and among peoples, of African, Arab, Indian, Chinese and European
origins, whose lives have been touched by the presence and role of this imposing structure. Fort Jesus, Mombasa like other Forts has been a place of contestation; however unlike many other Forts where contestation was usually between European powers, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was source of conflicts between diverse and desperate peoples and powers including Europeans, Arabs, Turks, and Africans among others. The Fort is a true symbol of human competitiveness; a representation of contestation, conflicts, challenges, wars, winning and losing and the notion of co-existence as respect for cultures as exemplified by the representative nature of the fort today. It is indeed a heritage of many cultures in one.

Very few forts represent and reflect the notion of human endurance and courage like Fort Jesus, Mombasa. Here, a Portuguese captain and a handful of fort defenders that included a few Portuguese and Africans defended the fort for 33 months in the 17th Century, during what has been referred to as the great siege. Under the Omani Arab siege, the fort was defended by these few people despite daily bombardment, hunger and siege. It is considered one of the most remarkable examples human endurance anywhere.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa represents the first successful attempt European power(s) to stamps its authority on the entire coast of the western Indian Ocean in an area that had hitherto remained the preserve of Asia and the East for millennia.

3. a. Criteria under which inscription is proposed (and justification for inscription under these criteria)

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is proposed to be inscribed in the World Heritage List as a Cultural Site under criteria (ii, iv).

(iii) The Fort marked a milestone in fortress architectural design during the 16th Century period as a stronghold of safeguarding the Portuguese interests not only on the East African coast, but also of controlling the trans-Indian Ocean trade. The successful development of Fort Jesus, Mombasa design led to some of its strategic aspects being used to improve other forts in Africa. Examples of such improved forts include St. Georges Castle-Elmina in Ghana and Fortaleza de S. Sebastiao in Ilha de Mozambique. Fort Jesus, Mombasa also represents a symbol of struggle for freedom as later it became a ground of resistance to domination by any power. In the process many people died, while others were displaced, taken into custody or sent into exile. No or few Forts represent the spirit of resistance, courage and endurance as exemplified in the history of the Fort Jesus, Mombasa including during the great siege by the Omani Arabs. Currently Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a landmark of social cohesion given its continued use by people of diverse cultures but still retaining its characteristics of Fort or seat of power, military installation, prison and now a monument and museum.

(iv) Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the best surviving 16th century Portuguese military fortification in the world. The Fort design, which was the first of its kind, employed the use of a human form as represented by the various bastions and flanks. Renaissance architects associated the idea of geometrical perfection with the human body and this
belief that in human proportions lies the harmony of “everything in the world” had for them an almost cosmic significance. No other fortress best illustrates the relationship to the human body more clearly than Fort Jesus, Mombasa. This layout as simple as it appeared ensured complete protection of the Fort. It provided for the widest angle of firing range and cover against any incoming enemy attack.

3. b. Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

Fort Jesus, Mombasa is an exceptional symbol of the interchange of cultural values and influences between and among peoples, of African, Arab, Asians, Turkish, Persian and European origin, whose lives have been touched by the presence and role of this imposing structure. Built by the Portuguese at the end of the 16th Century and used by them for over 100 years, Fort Jesus Mombasa bears testimony to the first successful attempt by western civilization to control the Indian Ocean trade routes which had remained under Eastern influence over several millennia.

The Fort was used by various world powers as a stronghold to safeguard their interests along the East African coast. In this way Fort Jesus, Mombasa was at the centre of the then emerging political, commercial and cultural globalization. In the process the Fort experienced conflicts and contestations. However, unlike many other Forts where contestation was usually between European powers, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was a source of conflict between diverse peoples and powers that converged there. Given this long and enduring history, distinctive architectural design and development, Fort Jesus Mombasa encompasses unique fort features as well as an important historical development that came to define and shape the relations between the East and the West.

Fort Jesus Mombasa remarkably exemplifies the ‘new thinking’ of Renaissance military architecture in 15th C Europe. Designed by the great Italian Military architect, Joao Batista Cairato, it took the form of a human body that was regarded as the most perfect of God’s creations. This reasoning was characteristic of the Renaissance and was a base of the architectural theory of the age. No other fortress best illustrates the relationship to the human body more clearly than Fort Jesus, Mombasa. This layout as simple as it appeared ensured complete protection of the Fort. It provided for the widest angle of firing range and cover against any incoming enemy attack.

The construction of the Fort deliberately exploited the local geological formation consisting of massive pure coral. The lower parts of the defences are made of solid coral cut back to the line of the walls, but more pronounced on the western side. The original defence on the landward sides consists of a 4.27 metres thick wall, comprising a parapet nearly 2.75 metres wide and 1 metre high, backed by a parapet walk and firing step. The Fort was impregnable; in its 200 years experience of bombardment and nine attempts of takeover, only once was this successful through deceit by scaling the walls. Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the best surviving 16th century Portuguese military fortification of its kind in the world.
The Fort Jesus design influenced the conceptualisation and improvement of other Portuguese forts such as Elmina Castle, St. Georges and others. To the present the fort remains a landmark of social cohesion given its use by people of diverse cultures whilst still retaining its many characteristics of fort or seat of power, military installation, prison and now a monument and museum.

The Fort in its over 400 years of existence has remained unchanged in its general design and layout throughout the various periods of occupation and use, therefore maintaining its integrity and authenticity. It is a gazetted monument under the National Museums and Heritage Act, and is managed by the National Museums of Kenya, the custodian of the country’s heritage.

3c. Comparative Analysis (including state of conservation of similar properties)

The presence of European forts in Africa and in other continents led to European control of trade centres and routes and expansion of their empires. In order to sustain their presence, colonial powers constructed military forts. Whereas some forts like those in West Africa were used to administer a few islands and ports and the indirect control of adjacent lands, in other instances, like the case of Fort Jesus and East Africa, Forts in the early period were restricted to the coast as the interest was in the far east, since the interior situation, was sometimes not conducive for settlement due to the perceived fierce people and wildlife.

This race for expansion over and control of new lands and trade routes, notably during the 15th and 16th Centuries, led to fierce competition amongst various European powers. This brought about the development of new form of military warfare such as the development of gun powder artillery. As a response to the development of gun powder artillery, a new design of military defence system was developed which represented a ‘new thinking’ in Renaissance military architecture. This system involved the construction of bastion fortifications which in some cases were enhanced by a moat. This innovative design made the fort impregnable against attack and played an important role in the European expansionist policies around the world. Some of the bastion fortifications fortresses include: the Fortress of Mazagan, Morocco; the Fort of Manar, Sri Lanka; the Forte dos Reis Magos, Brazil and Fortress Kambambe in Angola; Fort Aguada, India; Red Fort, India; Kilwa Kisiwani, Tanzania; Fortaleza de S. Sebastião, Mozambique; Fort James, Gambia; Elmina Castle, Ghana and Fortifications of the City of Valletta. The design and layout of Fort Jesus Mombasa, that includes four bastions and a moat around its three sides, remarkably exemplifies this ‘new thinking’ of Renaissance military architecture.

As a result of employing this new military advancement in its design and layout, Fort Jesus, Mombasa, was able to sustain long periods of bombardments but did not suffer any structural changes throughout the centuries. Fort Jesus’ centrality as opposed to other similar forts made it a strategic position for the control of the lucrative Indian Ocean trade routes. The Portuguese, in their quest to control the Indian Ocean trade routes, suffered many setbacks until they subdued Mombasa and built Fort Jesus to cement their control over the region. Subsequently, various world powers leveraged
Fort Jesus’ centrality to control the western Indian Ocean seaboard and its attendant trade. Therefore, although Fort Jesus was finished in the 17th Century, it still remains a remarkable product of 16th Century architectural theory and a high point of Renaissance thought.

**Fortress of Mazagan, Morocco**

Fortress of Mazagan is a Portuguese fortification that was built as a fortified colony in the early 16th century and is now part of the city of El Jadida. Just like Fort Jesus and other fortresses of the time, the design of the Fortress of Mazagan is a response to the development of modern artillery in the Renaissance. Both Fort Jesus and Mazagan had three gates and the main entrance of both forts was connected to land via a drawbridge. Although Mazagan originally had five bastions, only four have survived, the fifth being in ruins, destroyed by the Portuguese while retaking it in 1769. On the other hand, all the four bastions of Fort Jesus are still intact, which in part is due to its superior design and engineering which ensured that each part contributed to the defense of its neighbor, together with the fact that the Fort’s base is cut out from solid coral, adding to its strength and inexpugnability. Unlike the Fortess of Magazan, Fort Jesus was used to control large areas and involved more powers in its wars. These characteristics therefore made Fort Jesus impregnable to outside attack making it the best model of fortification employed in the world at the time.

**The fort of Manar, Sri Lanka**

The fort of Manar was built by the Portuguese in 1560 on the Island of the same name. The territory relatable to Manar comprised also the lands of Mantota on the main island. It is a very small fortress; four sided, with two small redoubts on the two opposite angles overlooking the strait. On the other hand, Fort Jesus, built around 1593, is comparatively larger in size, with four bastions diagonally placed, an outwork overlooking the channel to the Old Port of Mombasa, watch towers, a moat and barracks organized around the central courtyard. Fort Manar had no garrison of infantry, but stretched alongside it there was a settlement of one hundred and fifty families of Portuguese, two hundred handicraftsmen and a Captain whilst in Fort Jesus the military establishment resided inside, making mobilization of defense personnel easy, at Manar, the Captain and the infantry were stationed outside the fort. This arrangement made Fort Mannar to be easily captured, changing hands twice from 1560 to 1795 from the Portuguese to the Dutch and eventually to the British. Though Fort Jesus changed hands nine times between 1593 and 1863, it was not because of military bombardment, but through deceit, trickery and a siege, thus demonstrating the superiority of its design and layout.

**Forte dos Reis Magos, (Fortress of Three Wise Men), Brazil**

Forte dos Reis Magos was built between 1598 and 1628 to defend the city of Natal from the Dutch invasion. The fort was constructed on the top of the reefs in order to guarantee a solid base. It adopted the five corner star design, which was then conventional for a maritime fortress. Forte dos Reis Magos was strategically positioned
to offer a good view of attackers coming from the Ocean and the mainland. Fort Jesus was also built by the Portuguese around the same time, on a coral reef promontory overlooking the Indian Ocean channel to the Old Port of Mombasa. It similarly had five corners, but unlike Forte dos Reis Magos, the five corners of Fort Jesus were enhanced by elongation of the sides to take the shape of a human body that was regarded as the most perfect of God’s creations at the time based on military architecture of renaissance. In addition, Fort Jesus had two most striking features; the two landward bastions with their deep re-entrant angles by which the curtain wall between them and the opposite faces of the bastions could be swept with enfilade fire. Fort Jesus’ superior design and layout enabled the Portuguese to safeguard their interest on the lucrative Indian Ocean trade routes from other foreign powers as well as to defend themselves from the hostilities of the Mombasa native inhabitants. Due to this remarkable improvement of the five corner star design, Fort Jesus was not vulnerable to be captured by hostile forces, unlike Forte dos Reis Magos, that easily changed hands from the Portuguese to the Dutch and then to the Portuguese between 1633 to 1654. Therefore, Fort Jesus Mombasa, unlike any other fortress, demonstrates significant advancement in the development of military fortifications of the time.

**Fortress Kambambe, Angola**

The Fortress of Kambambe a property on the Tentative List was built by the Portuguese in 1604 in Kambambe Province of Kwanza Norte. This Fortress was built to defend and support their conquest and penetration in Angolan territory through the Kwanza River, unlike Fort Jesus, which was built not only to secure the control of Mombasa Island, but also to control the lucrative Indian Ocean trade routes. The occupation of Kambambe cost the Portuguese a lot on account of the resistance offered by the locals to the foreign domination. Similarly, Fort Jesus was the scene of contestation and suffering occasioned by the fight for control of this symbol of authority from diverse interest groups such as the Arabs, Persians, Asians, Europeans, and the local populations.

The Fortress of Kambambe was used for storage of goods, a staging point for slave raids and a gathering point for slaves from the surrounding villages traded by the Portuguese. The slaves were then kept in the fort awaiting shipment to America. Fort Jesus, on the other hand, was built purely for defensive purposes against threats to the Portuguese interests emanating not only from outside powers but the local inhabitants as well. Whereas the Fortress of Kambambe fell into ruins, Fort Jesus is still intact and continues to symbolize the intense human rivalries, domination and interchanges that have come to characterize the history of the West Indian Ocean seaboard.

**Fort Aguada, India**

Fort Aguada was built in Goa by the Portuguese in 1612, and was the main Portuguese outpost in Asia. Similarly, Fort Jesus was the main Portuguese Fort in the West Indian Ocean seaboard. The Portuguese built Fort Aguada to guard the northern shores of the Mandovi estuary from attacks by the Dutch and Maratha raiders. Conversely, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was built by the Portuguese to control the expansive and lucrative Indian Ocean trade routes making it their focal point for the exploitation of resources, as well
as for political and economic control, and thereafter by other European powers. Fort Jesus contributed to the Portuguese expansion to the east and extension to the building of Fort Aguada. Often there was exchange of military personnel between the two Forts especially during the many sieges. Fort Jesus played a key role in the political and economic power expansion and domination by the West over other regions of the world, and therefore is a testimony to the cultural and economic interchanges between various groups of people at the time. While some parts of Fort Aguada are in a state of ruins, Fort Jesus’ basic design and structure have remained the same despite changing hands several times, hence retaining its integrity.

Red Fort, India

Red Fort, also known as Delhi Fort, is a World Heritage site and was constructed by Emperor Shah Jahan in 1639 A.D. Just like the Red Fort, which is a fusion of Islamic, Persian, Timurid and Hindu traditions, Fort Jesus, Mombasa is basically a European Portuguese Fort with some elements of Islamic architecture added. Whereas Fort Jesus was built primarily for military functions, the Red Fort, on the other hand, was built as a residence of the royal family – hence was ill-suited for military purposes and, the British therefore, had to modify it to suit their military requirements. While the Red Fort exhibits high level of art form and ornamental work, Fort Jesus, Mombasa is a brilliant anthropomorphic military design that performed its intended military function to perfection as demonstrated by the fact that it was taken only by deceit and not bombardment.

In this way, Fort Jesus is an outstanding demonstration of the new thinking in military architecture of the Renaissance period.

Kilwa Kisiwani ‘Gereza’, Tanzania

Kilwa Kisiwani in Tanzania is a World Heritage Site. The Gereza Fort situated within the World Heritage Site was built on a small spit of land near the entrance to the harbour, covering an area of 109 square meters. Thus, compared to Fort Jesus, Mombasa, it is a small construction. The construction material came from demolished houses that were built of coral rag set in lime mortar. A complete garrison of 150 people, consisting of military officers and officials, occupied the fort.

The Gereza Fort, just like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, was built to protect the Portuguese interests on the island. Built in 1505, it was abandoned by the Portuguese in 1512, who destroyed much of the original fortress before leaving the island.

The Gereza Fort, like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, was occupied by Omani Arabs, who added some features like trillions to the top of the upper roof walls. Today, however, only a section of the original Portuguese fort remains. Therefore, north of Ilha de Mozambique, Fort Jesus, Mombasa remains the only icon of the original Portuguese architecture of the time that still remains intact.
**Fortaleza de S. Sebastião – Mozambique**

The entire Ilha de Mozambique, including Fortaleza de S. Sebastião, is listed on the World Heritage List. The Portuguese faced constant threats from the Dutch and local kingdoms, such as Macua and Ajaua, and hence a decision to build the fortress was taken in 1545 and construction work began in 1558. It was still not completed when attacked by the Dutch in 1607, but it was finished shortly afterwards, in 1620. Fortaleza de S. Sebastião has had to be restored several times due to bombardments and has also suffered from cyclone damage along the outwork. Fort Jesus, Mombasa, on the other hand, has not suffered significant damage that required restoration.

Of all the forts erected overseas by the Portuguese, the plan of Fortaleza de S. Sebastião is the one with strongest similarities with Fort Jesus, Mombasa, even if it is not so regular and shows a disregard of certain basic principles, like keeping the curtain walls straight. With one exception, in Fortaleza de S. Sebastião, the line of the curtain walls are broken up and the four bastions do not show preoccupation with symmetry. While the plan of Fortaleza de S. Sebastião is trapezoidal, that of Fort Jesus is not only symmetrical, but is also in the shape of the human body.

Like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, Fortaleza de S. Sebastião was, built by the Portuguese for control and domination of trade. The Portuguese, however, were mostly interested in the trade to the interior of this part of Africa, such as gold from inland Zimbabwe, and therefore Fortaleza de S. Sebastião was also built to secure trade routes to the interior of Africa. Fort Jesus, on the other hand, was used to control both local trade and the trade routes of the western Indian Ocean. In this way, Fort Jesus, unlike Fortaleza de S. Sebastião, acted as a pivot and anchored the emerging globalization in the region and therefore played an important role in the interchange of human values during this period within realms of the western Indian Ocean.

**Fort James, Gambia**

Fort St. James, a fort inscribed on the World Heritage List, is located on river Gambia, which serves as an important entry route to Africa’s interior from the Atlantic Ocean. It was originally built by Baltic German servants for a company owned by the Duke of Courland (present day Latvia).

Fort St. James was constructed using different materials; for instance, the local sandstone material was used for fortification, while other buildings within the fort, such as the lodgings, barracks, storerooms, granaries and the church, were built of wood and thatch. Fort Jesus, Mombasa, on the other hand, had two thirds of the exterior walls cut out of solid rock with the remaining being constructed of coral rag laid in lime mortar.

Like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, Fort James witnessed several periods of turmoil in which it changed hands. For instance, in 1659, it was captured by a French Privateer but it was soon recaptured by Courland in 1661, then given to the English, who later renamed it James II after the heir to the English throne. Again, in 1692, the French naval squadron captured the island from the English and altered the bastions. The English, however, regained control of the Fort in 1702, but again the French took control from 1704 to
1708 and made several modifications to it. After several battles, the Fort was restored in 1776, at what time a new structure was added at the entrance that altered the design of the fort to a quadrilateral. This is in contrast to Fort Jesus, Mombasa, which despite several takeover attempts, was able to withstand, over 200 years of bombardment without any significant damage to the structure, a testimony to its superior design and technological advancement of its time.

![Figure 9: Fort James, Gambia](image)

**Elmina Castle, Ghana**

The Portuguese were the first Europeans to come to Ghana. They named the place where they landed “Elmina” (from the Portuguese word *mina*, meaning a gold mine) and the country, the “Gold Coast,” because of the abundance of gold dusts they found on land. Fort Sao Jorge da Mina (Elmina), built in 1482, is a World Heritage Site, and was the first European fort to be built in Ghana and in Africa. The Castle was built under the supervision of the Portuguese Captain Diogo de Azambuja, who was a leader of an expedition of 600 Portuguese soldiers. The fort became the headquarters of the Portuguese in the Gold Coast from its foundation until the Dutch conquest, in 1637.

Fort Jesus, Mombasa was built more than 100 years later, under the supervision of an Italian architect, Joao Batista Cairrato, and exhibits a new Renaissance conception in military architectural design, which included new defensive features such as bastion fortifications, thick walls and moats. The Portuguese, thereon, used this design and technology to improve other forts around the world, including Elmina Castle itself and Fort S. Sebastião, Mozambique. For instance, the defensive capability of Elmina Castle was enhanced by adding a moat around it. While Fort Jesus took advantage of the new Renaissance military architecture, Elmina Castle was built long before that, hence the Portuguese used the new technology only to improve Elmina Castle. This new design of a military outpost allowed the Portuguese to control, from Fort Jesus, Mombasa, the East African Coast and the Trans-Indian Ocean Trade for about 150 years.
Being the first of the Portuguese forts to be constructed in Africa, Elmina Castle set the pattern for subsequent Portuguese fort constructions, because the same requirements persisted. Elmina, like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, occupied a promontory, the neck of which the constructors cut by a ditch. Entry was allowed through a drawbridge, first to an outer fortified enclosure and then to a stronger inner ward. Each enclosure contained rooms backed against the fortifications and opening on a central courtyard.

Elmina, like Fort Jesus, Mombasa, was repeatedly conquered by various powers. For instance at various periods in the 1600s the Dutch repeatedly attacked the Castle. As a result of the bombardments, very little of the early Portuguese castle at Elmina is now visible; the only intact Portuguese portion being the cistern, dating from 1482, whereas the rest of Castle consists of the portions built during the Dutch rule. The Portuguese features at Fort Jesus, Mombasa, on the other hand, have remained intact despite various bombardments because it incorporated 16th Century advances in military architecture that enabled the fort to be built with stronger and thicker walls and allowed for an efficient way of mounting guns. Both Elmina castle and Fort Jesus, Mombasa, were built to ensure economic exploitation and military control by the Portuguese. While Elmina’s attention was focused to the interior of Africa, for exploitation of resources like gold, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was built with the aim of controlling the east coast of Africa, the sail lines of the East Indian Ocean and the whole trade around the Indian Ocean, including the spice trade from the East. Therefore, Fort Jesus Mombasa bears testimony to the first successful attempt by western civilization to control the Indian Ocean trade routes, which had remained under Eastern influence over several millennia.

**City of Valletta**

Valletta, the capital of Malta, and Fort Jesus Mombasa, were a creation of the Renaissance and were both designed by Italian Engineers. Both properties have fortified and bastioned walls.

Both properties, despite changing hands several times, have preserved in near entirety their original features. The properties are also associated with religious orders; Valletta belonged to the Military Order of the Knights of St John, while Fort Jesus was conceived under the Order of the Knights of Christ.

Valletta, as a fortress, only forms the core part of the network of the harbour fortifications - it was the keep, or citadel, of these defenses. Therefore, Valletta’s defensive function was effective only in combination with other city defence fortifications, which stretched for about 25kms. On the other hand, Fort Jesus relied on its design, layout and siting to defend itself and the surrounding Portuguese town of Gavanna, now known as Old Town Mombasa. This demonstrates that Fort Jesus was much superior in design and exemplifies the best of Renaissance military engineering.

In view of the above, Fort Jesus Mombasa, constructed by the Portuguese in order to control the Indian Ocean trade routes and which later became a scene of contestation
between various world powers, characterizes outstanding witness to the exchange of influences between European, African, Arabian and Asian cultures from the 16th to the 19th centuries. This is exemplified not only by its architecture, but also by the artifacts excavated inside the fort that include local African, Arabian, Persian, Chinese as well as European ceramics. Therefore, unlike any other fort of its time, Fort Jesus Mombasa played a pivotal role as a hinge for the articulation of intercultural dialogue among the different civilizations around the Indian Ocean and Western naval powers. Fort Jesus, Mombasa being at the centre of the then emerging political, commercial and cultural globalization exhibits an important interchange of human values, than any other Portuguese Fort of its time. Its Architectural value built on pure coral rock with a wall measuring up to 4.5 metres in some places, a concept of new thinking and the renaissance concept of the perfect body. The construction of its bastions therefore provided defensive mechanisms and ensured each side supported the other. Irrespective of its size Fort Jesus demonstrated a new consciousness’ of military technology, an impregnable piece of military genius of the time. Lastly for all the times it was fallen, at no time was this done through fire power but through trickery and by deceit.

3. d. Authenticity of the property
Fort Jesus Mombasa was designed by the great Italian Military architect, Joao Batista Cairato, based on the 15th C European Renaissance. It took the form of a human body that was regarded as the most perfect of God’s creations. It is laid out in the form of bastions and palisades, diagonally positioned, each supporting the other; a layout that ensures complete protection of the fort. Within this layout were barrack houses, the Captains house, Gun powder room, a gun platform, the chapel, a cistern and a well all organized around a central courtyard. Minor additions were made in a few places over the years in conformity with the overall design and layout.

Outside, the fort is surrounded by a dry moat which is well pronounced on the western side. The fort is built on promontory made of solid coral rock through which the foundations were dug and the construction made. The same position and layout has been maintained and no developments have been allowed within the precincts of the Fort. And as such, the nominated property retains its initial architectural and aesthetic values. The ramparts and the surrounding moat have not changed and the same materials used by the Portuguese in building the fort have been used in subsequent developments which for their part have not altered the overall shape of the initial fortress.

The function of the fort, although it is no longer a military installation respects its aesthetic form and value, and the modifications that have been made necessary by the current use do not diminish its unity, form and original layout.

3. d. The Integrity of the property
The boundaries chosen for the property include the adjacent open spaces around the fort. They are essential for keeping a perspective of the whole including visual and functional integrity. Fort Jesus, Mombasa retains its architectural and aesthetic values, as it was when it was built in the sixteenth century; for example, the fort’s ramparts
were cut out of solid coral rock and these have never changed. The moat around the fort that was used to defend the fort against land invasion is still intact and bears evidence of coral that was cut out to create the base of the fort construction. In addition, the materials used for subsequent developments and any other repair works have conformed to the original materials.

The fabric of the nominated property therefore is in good condition, well maintained and is not encroached upon by any other permanent structures. Within the fort, the minor changes to the building and its uses reflect the turbulent history. However, these minor changes have not damaged the integrity of the nominated property. The part of the moat that was recently used as a car park has been reintegrated to the property and the car park relocated to another site outside the nominated property.

The property has been nominated to include the adjacent underwater archaeological site that forms part of the historical context of the property. The location of the site in the historical sector of Old Town Mombasa still provides the cultural context and ambiance to the significance of the property. The views and vistas have hardly been compromised.

In order to preserve its values, integrity and authenticity as a national heritage, the Kenya Government has put in place relevant heritage protection legislation since the declaration of the nominated property as a National Monument in 1958. Furthermore, as part of the Mombasa Old Town Conservation area, the nominated property continues to benefit from the legal instruments in place for the management of the Old Town of Mombasa.

Figure 10. Present state of conservation of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
4. STATE OF CONSERVATION & FACTORS AFFECTING THE PROPERTY

4. a. Present state of conservation
The perimeter walls of the Fort are well preserved in their original state and height. The walls stand on a hard fossil coral rock reaching more than 17 metres above the ground. Two thirds of which is solid fossil rock in natural context. The inside of the Fort consisted of the barracks, church, Captains Offices and Residence, guardroom and munitions storage, all organized around the central courtyard. Most of the buildings that were built by the Portuguese inside the fort are survived by clear remains of wall foundations which are well documented. The buildings that are still standing were built later during the Omani occupation of the Fort. The Moat that surrounds the Fort is still in its original state making it difficult to access the fort except through the formal entrance. The management has landscaped it, provided seating benches and made trails around it as a visitor management strategy. The walls of the Fort are constantly affected by environmental degradation to which the management has kept regular monitoring and maintenance.

Currently, the Fort is in a very good state of conservation, and is maintained on a daily basis by National Museums of Kenya. Substantial conservation works were undertaken from December 2000 to March 2001. This included the re-plastering of the entire exterior walls, where the original plaster had fallen off. In addition to this, important works were implemented to improve on the surrounding landscape. All the informal craft shops were removed, the road to the water gate paved, and a garden planted along the sea. All these recent efforts have brought the Fort to a very good state of conservation, and only minimal maintenance and preventive conservation works are needed on regular basis.

The Fort like any other building located in similar environment is susceptible to environmental effects such as salinity and other natural elements. But solutions are well mastered, and the skilled craftsmen are available to mitigate these effects. The images below show the conservation state of the property.
4. b. Factors affecting the Property

(i) Development Pressures (e.g. encroachment, adaptation, agriculture, mining)
There are no development pressures affecting the fort or its associated features. Being a National Monument and its buffer zone being a conservation area, there are no developmental pressures affecting the property.

(ii) Environmental Pressures (e.g. pollution, climate change, desertification)
Global environmental changes have led to the increase in the sea level. Result of this has been that the tidal currents have started to undermine the coral that forms the base of the fort. With time this might affect the fabric of the building.

(iii) Natural disasters and risk preparedness (earthquakes, floods, fires, etc.)
   (a) Fires:
   Fort Jesus, Mombasa has never experienced any fire disaster. The Fort however, is adequately prepared to deal with any fire disaster by having staff trained in fire fighting and having fire fighting equipments within the property.
   (b) Flood
   The Fort has adequate drainage system within and outside the property that guards it against any flood. But staff are also adequately trained to deal with any such eventuality.
   (c) Earthquake
   The property is located outside the known earthquake prone areas.
(iv) **Visitor/Tourism pressures**
The Kenya coast is the main tourist hub of the country; it is estimated that over 80% of tourists who visit Kenya come to the coast. Of these number 70% visit Fort Jesus, Mombasa. The National Museums of Kenya has put in place a visitor management system that distributes visitors to other heritage places within the coast as per their individual carrying capacities and this reduces visitor or tourist pressure on Fort Jesus, Mombasa.

(v) **Number of inhabitants within the property and the buffer zone**
- Estimated population located within the property is nil. The site is guarded 24 Hours per day by security staff employed by National Museums of Kenya.
- Mombasa Old Town which is the buffer zone of Fort Jesus, Mombasa has a population of 300,000 people (2009 projection)

5. **Protection and Management of the Property**

5. a. **Ownership**
The property is owned by the Government of Kenya through the National Museums of Kenya

5. b. **Protective designation**
Fort Jesus, Mombasa was first gazetted as a National Park under legal Notice No. 477 of 24th October, 1958. This legal notice was revoked when Fort Jesus, Mombasa was declared a monument under gazette notice No.1688 of 12th June, 1970. It was declared under the Preservation of Objects of Archaeological and Paleontological Interest Act Cap 215. Subsequently, the then preservation of objects of Archaeological and Paleontological Interest Act was revised and in its place came the Antiquities and Monuments Act Cap 215 of 1983. In 2006 this was repealed and replaced by the National Museums and Heritage Act 2006.

The proposed buffer zone of Mombasa Old Town was declared a conservation area under Gazette Notice No. 2092 of 11th May, 1990 and confirmed vide Gazette Notice number 1779 of 3rd May, 1991, under the Antiquities and Monument Act now replaced by the National Museums and Heritage Act 2006.

**By-laws**
The area is subjected to development control where:
- Buildings are not allowed to be more than three storeys high; this is the general skyline of the historical town
- All buildings must retain the historical character and features inherent in them. Therefore all upcoming buildings or refurbishment are to retain the original door and window proportions and design.
- Neon advertising signs are not allowed in the Old Town; instead advertisements are to be of hand carved timber boards.
5. **c. Means of implementing protective measures**

Once a site or building is gazetted as a National Monument no new developments or alterations can be done to the property without the approval of the National Museums of Kenya, who are the custodians of Kenya’s National cultural heritage. Because Fort Jesus, Mombasa is under the custodianship of the National Museums of Kenya, for any developments to be done the Site Manager has to first prepare renovation plans which are then reviewed internally and final permission granted by Head of the Department of Sites and Monuments. Moreover all developments within the buffer zone have to be approved by the National Museums of Kenya as per the prescribed by-laws.

5. **d. Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located (e.g. regional or local plan, conservation plan, tourism development plan)**

I. **District Development Plan for Mombasa 2008 – 2012**

As part of Vision 2030 government’s development strategy, the government has developed a 5 years medium term development plan for Mombasa district.

II. **Conservation Plan of Mombasa Old Town 1990:** Agency responsible is Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office (MOTCO) a department of the National Museums of Kenya charged with the management and conservation of Mombasa Old Town. The conservation plan lays the guidelines of the management and development of the gazetted conservation area of Mombasa Old Town.

III. **Fort Jesus, Management Plan, 2001, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum.**

The management plan lays down strategies to better conserve and manage the property.

IV. **Interpretation/Visitor Management Plan, 2005, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum**

This plan enhances interpretation of the fort and visitor movement within the property. All these documents are attached in section 7b.

5. **e. Property management plan or other management system**

A management plan was developed in 2001 for a 10 year period. Consultations with stakeholders are currently on going to develop a new one. A summary of the current plan is provided as an annex

5. **f. Sources and levels of finance**

The government is assisting the National Museums of Kenya with the salaries of employees, while the organization is responsible for the maintenance of its museums. The administration of Fort Jesus, Mombasa takes care of the different ledgers through the accounts unit. Fort Jesus, Mombasa is allowed to use Kenya Shillings 800,000 (US$ 10,000) from entrance fees collected. This is used in vehicle maintenance and small works. This ceiling is however, regularly reviewed to meet inflation.

Other than the government grant, Fort Jesus, Mombasa also receives funds from other donor organizations for various conservation and research projects.
5. g. Sources of expertise and training in conservation and management techniques
As indicated above the main statutory authorities responsible for the management of Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the National Museums of Kenya. The National Museums of Kenya (NMK) person responsible for Fort Jesus, Mombasa is the Chief Curator who is assisted by the Departments of Sites and Monuments, Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office and Coastal Archaeology. These departments have a critical pool of professionals trained in management and conservation of heritage resources. Other than that Fort Jesus, Mombasa is also networked to various international organizations such Center for Heritage in Development in Africa (CHDA), ICCROM (AFRICA -2009), International Research Centre for Earthen Construction (CRETerre-ENSAG), AFRICOM, University of Western Cape and other cultural institutions that offer training in management and conservation of heritage resources.

5. h. Visitor facilities and statistics
In order to make visitor experience enjoyable, Fort Jesus, Mombasa has developed various facilities; these include and are not limited to the museum, brochures and guidebooks that assist in interpreting the property. There is also a gift shop that sells souvenir and other merchandise related to Fort Jesus, Mombasa. There is a cafeteria for visitor relaxation and adequate sanitary facilities. Fort Jesus, Mombasa also has wheel chairs and ramps for disabled visitors. Fort Jesus receives on average 1 million visitors per year, mostly school children, students and regional and international tourists.

5. i. Policies and Programmes related to the presentation and promotion of the property
In 1958, the Fort was declared a National Park on account of its historical importance. The then colonial government realizing it’s educational and potential to attract visitors decided to develop the property for visitation by the public. Major excavations within the inside of the Fort were carried out between 1958 and 1969 to recover archaeological materials for both study and interpretation. At the same time, as part of site development, a number of works were carried out. These included building a museum on the foundation of the collapsed Portuguese barracks. Once these works were completed the fort was opened to the public in 1962.

Presentation
The guiding principle in the interpretation and presentation of the Fort and its related military landscape is informed by the need to communicate the complexity of its history and to unravel the many layers of the historical events to the public. Its interpretative provision is meant to improve and enhance the visitor experience. As a consequence the human activity that created, sustained and continues to use the Fort is highlighted. Access to Fort Jesus, Mombasa is mainly by a terraced all weather-road connected to the rest of the road network of Mombasa town. Ample car parking space is available. An access bridge and paved way leading from the car park into the inside of the Fort is used both for deliveries and by visitors. Once inside, the visitor is first attended to from a ticket office adjacent to a cafeteria and not faraway from the entrance, before being guided through the Fort. Self-guided tours are also allowed.
Fort Jesus, Mombasa is presented as a whole (see ground plan for more details). The site display includes, the bastions, passage of the arches, ammunition store, barracks and chapel (now at ground level), Portuguese and British cannons and Portuguese paintings. A museum located within the Fort houses an exhibition of the artifacts recovered from the Fort and the various coastal areas of Kenya.

A soft drink shop and a craft shop are housed in the former prisons office and kitchen respectively. The drinks shop sells a variety of soft drinks whilst the craft shops sells souvenirs. The entrance to the Fort serves as the exit as well.

**Interpretation**

As observed by Michael Haynes (2001), the free leaflet gives a brief description of how the fort began its existence, and a list of key dates in its history; the guidebook provides a deeper knowledge about the site, and is an attempt to describe various sections of the fort. Details concerning the salvage and conservation of the Santo Antonio de Tanna are also given. Information panels are provided situated on key parts of the Fort such as at the Main Gate giving a translation of Portuguese inscriptions and the Omani House both in English and Swahili translation. There are also two notices in the main entrance showing the chronology of the Fort.

**Descriptive text notices are displayed in the seven key areas, they include:**

Four cannonades in the East Wall, and the Museum arcade. There are two types of guides presently available at the Fort. One type of guide is brought in externally from the Fort, either hired from outside or brought in as a tour leader. The other type is available from the education office. There is also reconstruction within the Omani House, a receiving room the Sultan would receive his guests, complemented by displays of associated Omani artifacts within the house.

**5. j. Staffing levels (Professional, Technical, Maintenance)**

Fort Jesus, Mombasa has 104 employees who carry out various activities. Within these staff members there are seven professional and eleven technical staff whose expertise are in architecture, conservation, archaeology, museology and management. The other staff are engaged in maintenance of the Fort. Fort Jesus, Mombasa has also four Education officers who spearhead education programmes to schools and the general community.
Figure 12. Organogram of Fort Jesus, Mombasa
6. MONITORING

6. a. Key indicators for measuring state of conservation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Periodicity</th>
<th>Location of Records</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotten lintels due to infiltration of rainwater (This is due to oxidation)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decayed timber frames (this can be due either to dry or wet rot)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disintegration and erosion of wall plaster (this can be due to sub florescence or efflorescence)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molds and overgrowth on walls due to dampness (due to high humidity in the walls)</td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Sites and Monuments Department, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above indicators are used to arrive at quantitative measures that enable the museum stall to determine the state of conservation of the property and the appropriate mitigation measures that could be applied to address the problem.

6. b. Administrative arrangements for monitoring property

The Directorate of Museums Sites and Monuments, through the Department of Coastal Sites and Monuments is responsible for monitoring the condition of the property. The Department of Coastal Archaeology also monitors any archaeological material that may be found within the vicinity of the property and that may impact on the property. The relevant contact information is: Department of Coastal Sites and Monuments, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum, P.O. Box 82412 Mombasa, Telephone 254-41-2220081/2220058/2220077. Email: fortjesus@museums.or.ke or fortjmsa@swiftmombasa.com.

6. c. Results of previous reporting exercises

Since Fort Jesus, Mombasa has not been listed; there are no reports that have been made to comply with any international agreements and programmes. Several reports however, have been made by the Department of Sites and Monuments to comply with local institutional requirements. These include:

7. DOCUMENTATION

7. a. Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials

IMAGE INVENTORY AND PHOTOGRAPH / AUDIOVISUAL AUTHORIZATION FORM

1. I 

I hereby grant free of charge to UNESCO the non-exclusive right for the legal term of copyright to reproduce and use in accordance with the terms of paragraph (2) of the present authorization throughout the world the photograph(s) and/or slides described in paragraph 4.

2. I understand that the photographs and slides described in paragraph 4 of the present authorization will be used by UNESCO to disseminate information on the sites protected under the World Heritage Convention in the following ways:
   a) UNESCO publications
   b) Co-editions with private publishing houses for World Heritage publications: a percentage of the profits will be given to the World Heritage Fund;
   c) Postcards to be sold at the sites protected under the World Heritage Convention through national parks services or antiquities (profits, if any, will be divided between the services in question and the World Heritage Fund);
   d) Slide series – to be sold to schools, libraries, other institutions and eventually at the sites (profit, in any, will go to the World Heritage Fund);
   e) Exhibitions etc.

3. I also understand that I shall be free to grant the same rights to any other eventual user but without any prejudice to the rights granted to UNESCO.

4. The list of photographs and slides for which the authorization is given is attached.

5. All photographs and slides will be duly credited. The photographer’s moral rights will be respected. Please indicate the exact wording to be used for the photographer’s credit.

6. I hereby declare and certify that I am duly authorized to grant the rights mentioned in paragraph 1 of the present authorization.
7. I hereby undertake to indemnify UNESCO and to hold it harmless of any responsibility, for any damages resulting from any violation of the certification mentioned under paragraph 6 of the present authorization.

8. Any differences or disputes which may arise from the exercise of the rights granted to UNESCO will be settled in a friendly way. Reference to courts or arbitrations is excluded.

Signed: __________________________

Date: _____________________________
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID No.</th>
<th>Format (slide/print/video)</th>
<th>Caption</th>
<th>Date of Photo</th>
<th>Photgrapher/Director of the video</th>
<th>Contact details of copyright owner (Name, address, tel/fax, email)</th>
<th>Non exclusive cession of rights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Captain’s House</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Cistern</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>003</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Exhibition In the Fort museum</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>004</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort Jesus built on coral rock</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort Jesus and Mombasa Old Town</td>
<td>27-07-008</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort gun Platform</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort main entrance</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort Museum</td>
<td>05-10-03</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Omani House</td>
<td>25-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort passage of the arches</td>
<td>30-01-06</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Fort passage of the steps</td>
<td>18-01-06</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Portuguese Canon</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>013</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Portuguese crown</td>
<td>31-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>014</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Portuguese inscription</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>015</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>St. Mateus bastion</td>
<td>24-01-09</td>
<td>Okoko Ashikoye</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ashikoye@yahoo.com">ashikoye@yahoo.com</a>, <a href="mailto:fortjesus@museums.or.ke">fortjesus@museums.or.ke</a></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.b. Texts relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans or documented management systems and extracts of other plans relevant to the property

2. Fort Jesus, Mombasa Management Plan

7. c. Form and date of most recent records or inventory of property

7. d. **Address where inventory, records and archives are held**

National Museums of Kenya  
Museum Hill Road  
P.O. Box 40658-00100  
Nairobi  
Kenya

National Museums of Kenya  
Fort Jesus, Museum  
P.O. Box 82412-80100  
Mombasa  
Kenya

National Archives and Documentation Centre  
P.O. Box 49210-00100  
Nairobi  
Kenya
7. e. Bibliography


Axelson, E. 1960 Portuguese in South – East Africa, 1600-1700, Johannesburg


Freeman-Grenville, G. S. P. 1975 The East African Coast: Selected documents from the first to the earlier nineteenth century


Marjay, F.P. 1960 Henry the Navigator. E.N. Press, Lisbon


Were, G., Derek, A. W. and D.J. Parsons. 1984 *East Africa through a thousand years.* Evans Brothers Ltd Nairobi
8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF RESPONSIBLE AUTHORITIES

The Director General
National Museums of Kenya
P.O. Box 40658-00100
Nairobi
Tel: 254 20 3742161
Fax: 254 20 3741424
Email: dgmk@museums.or.ke

8. a. Preparer

Donatius Kamamba
Director, Department of Antiquities, Republic of Tanzania
P.O. Box 2280
Dar es Salaam, Tanzania
Tel: 255-22-2116554
Fax: 255-22-2122840
E-mail: antiquities@omnisys.co.tz

Dr. Hassan Wario Arero
Director Museums, Sites & Monuments
P.O. Box 40658-00100
Nairobi, Kenya
Tel: 254-20-3741759
Fax: 254-20-3741424
Email: hwario@museums.or.ke

Philip Jimbi Katana
Chief Curator, Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum
National Museums of Kenya
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum
P.O. Box 82412-80100
Mombasa
Tel: 254-41-2220058
Email: jimbikatana@museums.or.ke

Kassim Omar Mwamba
Head, Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office
National Museums of Kenya
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum
P.O. Box 82412-80100
Mombasa
Tel: 254-41-2225906/2312246
Email: kassim.omar@museums.or.ke
Fax: 254-41-2226302
Dr. Herman Kiriama  
Head, Coastal Archaeology  
National Museums of Kenya  
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum  
P.O. Box 82412-80100  
Mombasa  
Tel: 254-41-2220058  
Email: hkiriama@museums.or.ke  
Fax: 254-41-2220077

8. b. Official Local Institution/Agency  
National Museums of Kenya  
Fort Jesus, Mombasa Museum  
P.O. Box 82412-80100  
Mombasa  
Tel: 254-41-2220058  
Email: fortjesus@museums.or.ke

8. c. Other Local Institutions  
Coast Forest Conservation Unit  
P.O. Box 86-80400  
UKUNDA, Kenya

National Museums of Kenya  
Malindi Museum  
P.O. Box 939-80200  
MALINDI

National Museums of Kenya  
Gede Museum  
P.O. Box 5067-80200  
MALINDI, Kenya

National Museums of Kenya  
Lamu Museum  
P.O. Box 48-80500  
LAMU, Kenya

8. d. Official Web Address  
http://www.museums.or.ke  
Contact Name: Philip Jimbi Katana  
Email: jimbikatana@museums.or.ke, jimbikatana@yahoo.com
9. SIGNATURE ON BEHALF OF THE STATE PARTY

It is my pleasure to submit the attached Nomination Dossier for inscription on the World Heritage List of:

‘FORT JESUS, MOMBASA’

The State Party has made every effort to comply with the rigorous information and documentation requirements of the ‘Operational Guidelines and hope the document will be duly accepted for evaluation by the Committee.

Signed: ...........................................................................................................

Name: .............................................................................................................

Title: ..............................................................................................................

Organization: ..............................................................................................

State Party: .................................................................................................

Date: .............................................................................................................
Appendix 1. 2010 – 2014 Management Plan

a. Preamble

The following management plan is a revised version of the management plan that covered the period 2006 to 2010. This management plan has been formulated with the site stakeholders (see list of stakeholders at the beginning of this nomination dossier). In addition, this management planning process took cognisance of the following facts:

- the involvement of the local communities in planning for and protecting heritage resources within their territory;
- giving priority to local knowledge systems, human resources, skills and materials
- ensuring capacity building
- creating a stable equilibrated base on which further sustainable development can be made;
- giving priority to simple, incremental solutions to problems, that can easily be implemented within an existing framework;
- focusing on prevention and maintenance as a cost effective and sustainable strategy for management and conservation;
- ensuring tangible benefits to local communities;
- creating awareness and respect for international conservation norms.

The following management plan should serve as a tool to ensure:

- partnership and optimal contribution by all parties in reaching the objectives of the plan
- the coherency of all activities developed at the site
- the best use of the available resources
- proper understanding of the factors threatening the site by all stakeholders
- continuity in the management in case of changes in management.
### b. SWOT Analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strengths</th>
<th>Weakness</th>
<th>Opportunities</th>
<th>Threats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Funding</strong></td>
<td>- Generates foreign</td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Kenya Touring Board (KTB)</td>
<td>- Declining Central Government funding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Major income earner for NMK</td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Mombasa and Coast Tourism Association</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Donor funding</td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Coast Development Authority</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Friends of Fort Jesus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Attraction of donor funding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Potential for increased earnings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Development/strengthening commercial activities around the site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Proximity to CBD (Central Business District)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tourism</strong></td>
<td>- One of the major tourist attractions in Mombasa</td>
<td>- Fort Jesus within tourist circuit</td>
<td>- Low seasonal visitation (e.g. during rainy seasons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- most visited cultural site in Kenya</td>
<td>- Availability of local tourist market</td>
<td>- Competition from nearby tourist sites e.g. Zanzibar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Spectacular scenery</td>
<td>- Increase in visitors (local and foreign)</td>
<td>- Decline of tourist industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Local public attraction</td>
<td>- Co-operation with tour operators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Tour Guides identify themselves with Fort Jesus</td>
<td>- Availability of tourism training colleges</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Existence of tourist police unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Direct flights to Mombasa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Good tourism infrastructure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Tour guides speak different foreign languages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Promotion</strong></td>
<td>- Strategic location</td>
<td>- Advertising through various media e.g. hotels, brochures, tour operators, internet, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Long opening hours throughout the year</td>
<td>- Inscription on the WHL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Easy accessibility</td>
<td>- Site internationally known</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Fort on the internet</td>
<td>- Possibility of establishing marketing department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Time-to-time promotion undertaken</td>
<td>- Sound and Light shows at Fort Jesus and advertised on international flights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Existence of Friends of Fort Jesus (e.g. newsletter)</td>
<td>- Draw on in-house expertise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Human Resource</strong></td>
<td>- Human resource available</td>
<td>- Prospects offered by restructuring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Trained management staff available</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Competent human resource available</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Site Management</strong></td>
<td>- Site management structure in place</td>
<td>- Staff exodus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- NMK employs</td>
<td>- Nepotism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Weakness**

- **Opportunities**

- **Threats**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security Persons</th>
<th>Museum Identity</th>
<th>Site Management Improvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Cleaning undertaken by Fort Jesus</td>
<td>- Poor state of conservation (rusting, flaking)</td>
<td>- Improve site management by localising generated funds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Legislation</th>
<th>Site Management Improvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of protection acts, Heritage and Museum Act.</td>
<td>- “Fort Jesus” as a name not patented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Declared National Monument - Double protection</td>
<td>- Prospects offered by the Museums and Heritage Act 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Misuse of the name “Fort Jesus”</td>
<td>- Erosion of the site - Climatic effects on building materials (humidity, sea moisture, wind, salty air)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Site Management Improvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- A durable structure</td>
<td>- Prospects/chances to survive many more years to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Important landmark in Old Town</td>
<td>- Erosion of the site - Climatic effects on building materials (humidity, sea moisture, wind, salty air)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Unique design</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- One of the few 16th C. Portuguese military architecture still surviving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Education and Research</th>
<th>Site Management Improvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Fort Jesus is in the Kenyan Education curriculum</td>
<td>- Prospects for increased school visits - Re-enforcement of classroom message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of an educational department at Fort Jesus</td>
<td>- Research potentials - Internship for scholars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Site shared and linked to other Swahili Cultural sites on the East African Coast</td>
<td>- Availability of traditional know-how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- High number of student visitors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Reservoir of knowledge on earlier European occupation in Africa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Linkage with Old Town</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Insufficient outreach programmes</td>
<td>- Lack of focus on educational programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Insufficient public awareness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Insufficient resources (e.g. transportation, fund, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lack of teacher’s packages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site Presentation</th>
<th>Site Management Improvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of parking facilities</td>
<td>- Upgrade and develop facilities (Customer care, etc.) - Proposal for site interpretation improvement available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of tour guides</td>
<td>- Risk of too much commercialisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of educational department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sound and Light Show</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Availability of signages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Existence of a museum at site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Inadequate interpretation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Not enough signage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Monuments versus Museum-Presentation debate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Social Environment</th>
<th>Site Management Improvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Venue for social gathering</td>
<td>- Good political will - Friendly neighbourhood Willingness of Old Town Community to get involved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Security of site (especially during night ceremonies)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In order to implement this management plan, a four year action plan has been developed.

### c. 2010-2014 Action Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular activities to be Implemented</th>
<th>Short Term 2010-2011</th>
<th>Long Term 2010-2014</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Establish sustainable Funding system</td>
<td>- Set up a fund raising committee - Draw terms of reference - Prepare project proposals for funding - Increase income from a variety of sources i.e. shop and restaurant</td>
<td>- Increase and maintain donor funding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Presentation and Interpretation</td>
<td>- Implement site interpretation Plan</td>
<td>- Improve visitor facilities - Improve site interpretative signage - Layout tourist trails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conservation works</td>
<td>- Implement the site Maintenance Plan</td>
<td>- Regular inspection and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tourism promotion</td>
<td>- Enhance links with tour agents - Draw up a marketing plan - Set up a marketing committee - Set up a website</td>
<td>- Continuous updating of a website - Increase site publicity through continuous distribution of publicity materials and merchandise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
d. Maintenance Plan 2009-2019

The property is in fair condition following major restoration works undertaken in May 2001, that involved plastering the exterior walls and restoration of the moat. Site pathological studies carried out in January 2009 revealed that some areas of the wall plaster that were restored in 2001 are degrading through sub-florescence and efflorescence, while the cliff on which the fort outwork sits is being undermined by tidal currents. As a result of the above it was found necessary to draw up a maintenance plan for a span of 10 years starting from May 2009. The following key areas were identified as the most critical ones to be addressed to ensure the integrity of the property is maintained.

- **Plastered surfaces**: the exterior and interior surfaces that show signs of erosion as a result of the effects of efflorescence/sub florescence require immediate restoration action.
- **The decorative plaster work and motifs**: the court of arms on either side of the fort and entrance need to be restored as their condition is slowly deteriorating.
- **Reinforced concrete**: steel reinforcement introduced during the British occupation of the fort has oxidized due to exposure to weathering elements.
- **Metal installations**: some of the installations on doors and windows have oxidized and needs repair work.
- **Wooden installations**: there is dry and wet rot on some of the timber installations that need to be restored or replaced appropriately.
- **Cast iron artifacts**: anchors, cannons and cannon balls need to be treated appropriately to prevent corrosion.
- **Moulds and overgrowth**: vegetation that has seeded on walls needs to be monitored not to interfere with the property.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building Elements</th>
<th>Year 1-3</th>
<th>Year 4-6</th>
<th>Year 7-9</th>
<th>10th Year</th>
<th>Major restoration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exterior, buttresses, plinth walls and Turrets</td>
<td>Carryout condition survey of all walls, costing and planning for the restoration and repairs.</td>
<td>Repairs to major structural defects and restoration of plaster if necessary</td>
<td>Monitor structural condition of the walls and repair if necessary</td>
<td>Carry out major condition survey to facilitate the next major restoration</td>
<td>Major restoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moat</td>
<td>Restore and integrate the moat along the northern façade to harmonise with the rest of the property</td>
<td>Continue maintenance of the moat.</td>
<td>Continue maintenance of the moat.</td>
<td>Continue maintenance of the moat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coral rock-base of the outwork</td>
<td>Investigate wave action and tidal currents on the coral base</td>
<td>Implement marine engineering recommendations to stabilise the coral base.</td>
<td>Monitor success of the coral rock filling against wave action (every three months)</td>
<td>Review overall performance of corrective measures and future projection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wooden ceiling joists and steel I beams</td>
<td>• Inspect all the wooden structural members for dry and wet rot. • Inspect all structural steel sections and replace where necessary</td>
<td>• Anti Termite treatment and repainting of all timber structural ceiling joists • Repainting to prevent oxidation of all exposed structural I beams.</td>
<td>Monitoring all structural members and replacement where necessary.</td>
<td>Carry out major condition survey to facilitate the next major restoration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Court of arms and plaster motifs</td>
<td>Research and test materials to be used for the restoration work.</td>
<td>Restoration based on accreddicated research findings and prepare interpretation panels.</td>
<td>Regular Monitoring of any negative effects at three months intervals.</td>
<td>Carry out major condition survey to facilitate the next major restoration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gates, anchors, cannons and cannon balls</td>
<td>Regular inspections and repaint whenever need arise</td>
<td>Remove loose particles and paint.</td>
<td>Regular inspections and repaint whenever need arise.</td>
<td>Carry out major condition survey to facilitate the next major restoration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors, windows and other accessories</td>
<td>Inspect and restore where necessary</td>
<td>Inspect and restore where necessary</td>
<td>Inspect and restore where necessary</td>
<td>Carry out major condition survey to facilitate the next major restoration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor surfaces</td>
<td>Regular inspection, sealing of cracks and cleaning.</td>
<td>Monitor and restore where necessary</td>
<td>Monitor and restore where necessary</td>
<td>Carry out condition survey to facilitate major restoration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical system</td>
<td>Regular inspection and repair lighting points where necessary.</td>
<td>Regular monitoring and repair</td>
<td>Regular monitoring and repair</td>
<td>Carry out condition survey to facilitate major overhaul of the systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbing system</td>
<td>Regular inspection and repair.</td>
<td>Regular monitoring and repair</td>
<td>Regular monitoring and repair</td>
<td>Carry out condition survey to facilitate major overhaul of the systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof and Ceiling finishes</td>
<td>Regular inspection and Cleaning of gutters, repair leaks and replace worn out soft board ceilings where necessary</td>
<td>Regular inspection and Cleaning of gutters, repair leaks and replace worn out soft board ceilings where necessary</td>
<td>Regular inspection and Cleaning of gutters, repair leaks and replace worn out soft board ceilings where necessary</td>
<td>Carry out condition survey to facilitate major restoration if necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Cost estimates                     | USD 75,000 | USD 125,000 | USD 62,500 | USD 62,500 |

| Responsibility                     | DG NMK, Director RMSM, Asst Director RMSM Coast, Chief Curator Fort Jesus National Monument and MOTCO | DG NMK, Director RMSM, Asst Director RMSM Coast, Chief Curator Fort Jesus National Monument and MOTCO | DG NMK, Director RMSM, Asst Director RMSM Coast, Chief Curator Fort Jesus National Monument and MOTCO | DG NMK, Director RMSM, Asst Director RMSM Coast, Chief Curator Fort Jesus National Monument and MOTCO |
Appendix 2. Responses from ICOMOS decisions and recommendations

*Include the guidelines for the conservation of the Old Town (1990 Conservation Plan) in the bylaw so as to strengthen protection and facilitate management.*

The current conservation by-laws are modelled along the 1990 conservation guidelines for the Mombasa old town and they are meant for the management and protection of the Mombasa old town conservation area which is the buffer zone surrounding the property.

*Revive the Mombasa Old Town Planning Commission and provide means for its functioning;*

The Mombasa Old Town Planning Commission has been in operation since gazettement of its members in 2009, *(gazette notice no. 2660 the local government act (cap. 265) the municipal council of Mombasa appointment)*. The commission is composed of members from the local authority (Municipal Council) interest groups from the local community, special interest groups and the National Museums of Kenya which provides the technical expertise and advisory work.

The Members of the Commission include:

Mariam El Maawy –(Chairperson),
Abubakar Mohdhar,
Abubakar Maady,
Sadiq Ghalia,
Sheikh Yusuf Musta,
Hassan Abdi,
Tubman Otieno,
Peterson Mutugi,
Tuesday Gichuki,
Reinforce the Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office (MOTCO) in terms of human resources and clarify its role

Establish a rigorous monitoring of the erosion of the coral rock that forms the foundation of the Fort;

The management of fort Jesus has been monitoring the undermining of the coral rock on which the outwork of the fort sits by the sea waves caused by climate change among other factors and has been carrying out some repair works e.g. the recently concluded repairs at the water gate. However a monitoring committee that carries out a regular and rigorous monitoring of the area has been established. The committee is composed of fort management and a marine engineer.

Consider the inclusion of the underwater archaeological remains in the nominated property;

The underwater archaeological remains in front of fort Jesus have always been part of the property and are already covered under gazette notice no 117 of 24th march 1977.

Relocating the car/bus parking area for visitors outside the moat for reasons of visual and functional integrity and authenticity.

A suitable alternative space has already been identified and the Park has now been relocated.

Adding maintenance concerns to the Management Plan, including regular documenting of the state of conservation of the Fort.
The maintenance aspects of the fort have been added into the revised management plan of 2010 to 2014.
NB
Despite the fact that we have responded to all the issues raised by ICOMOS most of them relate to the old town of Mombasa and not fort Jesus.

Appendix 3. Legal texts
Gazette Notice No. 2092

THE ANTIQUITIES AND MONUMENTS ACT

(Cap. 215)

DECLARATION OF MONUMENT

IN EXERCISE of the powers conferred by section 4 (1) (a) of the Antiquities and Monuments Act, the Minister for Home Affairs and National Heritage declares the area of land specified in the schedule, to be a monument within the meaning of the Act. Any objection to the declaration of any of those areas of land as a monument shall be lodged with the Minister within one month from the date of publication of this notice.

SCHEDULE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Locality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Historic Old Town</td>
<td>Mombasa Town</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All that area of land measuring approximately 13.0 (sic) hectares known as the Old Town including that part of the town known as Mji wa Kale, in Mombasa Town, Mombasa District, Coast Province, the boundaries of which are more particularly delineated red on the boundary plan No. 537/6, which is signed, sealed with the seal of the Survey of Kenya, and deposited at the Survey Records Office, Survey of Kenya, Nairobi, and a copy of which may be inspected at the office of the District Commissioner, Mombasa, Coast Province.

Dated the 24th April, 1990

D. N. Kuguru,
Minister for Home Affairs and National Heritage
RESERVATION OF OBJECTS OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL AND PALAEONTOLOGICAL INTEREST ACT

(Cap. 215)

CONFIRMATION OF NOTICE OF DECLARATION OF MONUMENT

In exercise of the powers conferred by subsection (3) of section 8 of the Preservation of Objects of Archaeological and Palaeontological Interest Act the Minister for Housing and Social Services hereby confirms Gazette Notice No. 117 of 1977 which declared the area of land specified in the Schedule hereto to be a monument within the meaning of the Act.

Kenya Subsidiary Legislation, 1977

SCHEDULE

PORTUGUESE SHIPWRECK

All that shipwreck, including any materials belonging to it, detached from it, together with any items of cargo, equipment, machinery or any other articles of whatsoever description belonging to or separated from the said ship, known as the "San Antonio" and believed to have sunk on 20th October, 1697 within a radius of 300 metres of the Flagpole at Fort Jesus in Mombasa Municipality, Coast Province in the Republic of Kenya.

Dated this 14th day of March, 1977.

[Signature]

Minister for Housing and Social Services

62
Appendix 4. Photographs

See the attached CD for additional photographs.
THE MTEPE

This vessel has passed into the category of mystery and has not been seen for over 60 years. It is believed to be the last craft of its kind which was built and maintained by the people of the area. The vessel was made of wood, and the sails were made of cloth. The vessel was used for fishing and transport.

A later model of this craft was the Dhow, which was constructed to travel over long distances. The Dhow had a sail area of about 150 square feet and a beam of about 12 feet.

These crafts appear to be of African origin and served nothing to Arab, Indian or European influence, and probably have their beginning in coastal, lower craft and of course well before along the major routes.
Map showing Fort Jesus and the buffer zone

Places of interest

1. Fort Jesus
2. Mombasa Club
3. Africa Hotel
4. Mandary Mosque
5. Old Post Office
6. Old Port and Government House
7. Sonce Gallery
8. Saba Mosque
9. Lever House and shop
10. "Rita House"
11. Site of an ancient Portuguese Church
12. Mombasa House
13. The "White House"
14. Lombardi Christmas
15. 4th Curio Market
16. Jubilee Hall
17. Muscat Gardens
18. Old Law Court
19. Denton's Site Rooms
20. Pegge Place
21. Banda Masque
22. Trafalgar Square
23. Seawall Cultural Centre
24. New restoration building
25. Mackinnon Market

Key

- PARK
- VIEW POINT
- HISTORIC BUILDINGS
- INTERESTING BALCONIES
- CATHEDRAL DOORS
- MUSEUM
- BOAT TOURS
- CRAFT WORKSHOPS
- SOUVENIR SHOPS
- CAFE (coffee & snacks)
- RESTAURANTS
- STREET RESTAURANTS
- CORE ZONE
- BUFFER ZONE
Appendix 6. Selected articles on Fort Jesus, Mombasa
Rediscovering Fort Jesus

War is Mombasa's other name, and nowhere else will you find more battle scars than in this four-century-old citadel

PAGES 2&3
On the sands of time

You never owned Mombasa. You were merely a tenant holding onto it until some other suitor with bigger guns sailed into view. Such is the island's violent history where no occupier was unremovable.

BY WAGA ODONGO:

Mombasa's name is believed to be derived from the Arabic word "mumasa" meaning "fortress" or "place of strength." The city has been a strategic trading post for centuries, with its location between the Indian Ocean and the interior of East Africa. The city has been ruled by various powers, including the Swahili, the Portuguese, the Omani, the British, and finally, the Kenyans.

The city's fortifications are a testament to its strategic importance. The Mombasa Fort, built in the 16th century by the Portuguese, was later expanded and altered by various other powers. The fort's current appearance dates back to the 19th century, when it was transformed into a colonial-era prison.

The fort is now a museum and a popular tourist attraction, offering visitors a glimpse into the city's rich history. The fort's walls, towers, and gates are a blend of architectural styles, reflecting the city's tumultuous past.

The fort's significance is not just in its physical structure but also in the stories it holds. It has been a witness to numerous conflicts, including the Mau Mau Uprising, which took place in the vicinity of the fort in the 1950s.

Today, Mombasa is a thriving city, a gateway to the rest of East Africa and a hub of commerce and tourism. The fort, with its blend of history and culture, continues to be a symbol of the city's resilience and its enduring legacy.
The riddle of a skeleton in a glass coffin

In the open field of this fascinating scene, a skeleton of a Christian, possibly a hermit, was found. His bones were laid out in a Christian way — with hands folded in prayer — and were carefully examined by the experts on bone density who felt that he was indeed a Christian.

Yet the mystery was not solved in a rush. The experts gathered at the dig site, and with their tools, they began to uncover the truth. They suspected that the skeleton might have been a hermit who lived in the area and passed away peacefully. The experts believed that he might have found solace in his simple life, surrounded by nature.

It is a mystery that continues to captivate the experts. They are determined to find out more about this mysterious figure who passed away so long ago. The experts are eager to learn more about his life and his connection to the Christian faith.

The experts gathered at the dig site, and with their tools, they began to uncover the truth. They suspected that the skeleton might have been a hermit who lived in the area and passed away peacefully. The experts believed that he might have found solace in his simple life, surrounded by nature.

It is a mystery that continues to captivate the experts. They are determined to find out more about this mysterious figure who passed away so long ago. The experts are eager to learn more about his life and his connection to the Christian faith.
FORT JESUS: Norwegian launches art exhibition

Norwegian artist Marianne Heske in co-operation with the Norwegian Ministry of Foreign Affairs will launch an art exhibition at the Gunpowder Tower at Fort Jesus in Mombasa, today. Ms Heske will present an art installation consisting of dolls’ heads and materials, conceptualised by local artists. The figures are based on Heske’s original work made in 1971. Heske has done similar projects in Nepal, China and Zimbabwe.
REVISED MANAGEMENT PLAN OF FORT JESUS

BY NATIONAL MUSEUMS OF KENYA, FORT JESUS MUSEUM

JANUARY, 2010
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We are extremely grateful to the initial sponsors of this program namely, ICCROM, CRAteres –EAG, NORAD, Sida, World Heritage Fund, Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Italy and the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Finland who brought together all those who participated in the exercise. These are the coordinators of the Africa 2009 course, resource persons, course assistants and participants. Others that we are deeply indebted are Members of the Mombasa Old Town and other stakeholders including both public and private institution.
PREFACE

This management plan is a review of earlier drafts produced, following an eight-week site management planning exercise carried out by 2 groups of participants of the Africa 2009 3rd Regional Course on Conservation and Management of Immovable Cultural Heritage held in Mombasa, Kenya in September, 2001.

It was done through a hectic and elaborate process of physically examining, assessing, evaluating, researching, interviewing, analyzing, conferring and adopting the various experiences from both the participants and resource persons to produce the initial document. It was designed for a 5 year period after which was subject for periodic evaluations after every five years. Ideally it was to be evaluated in 2006 but this was not possible until January 2008. The Management plan was revised in 2010 and has been extended to 2014.

Most of the physical issues, that were highlighted to be affecting the site then, like corroded window bars, chunks of concrete popping off due to corroded reinforcement, decay of timber beams due to dry and wet rot have been addressed, however, there are new threats that have been observed and these are the ones that have been captured in this evaluation.
1.0. LOCATION AND DESCRIPTION

Fort Jesus is located in the city of Mombasa on the east coast of Kenya. It is located between latitude 3° S 55° - 4° S 10° and Longitude 39° E 35° - 39° E 45°. It is bordered by the Swahili Cultural Centre on the southern side, the old Law Court building on the western side, Mombasa old town and the Mombasa Club on the north and the mouth of the old harbour on the eastern side. It is situated on the southern tip of Mvita and just adjacent to the Old Town. (See Map below).

Map showing Fort Jesus and the Buffer Zone

Figure 1. Location of Fort Jesus in relation to Old Town

It was designed by an Italian architect and engineer Giovanni Battista Cairoli (Joao Baptista Cairoli), who was a leading military architect of the day. The design is that of a human form, regarded as the most perfect of God's creations, and its construction aimed to achieve a similar functional and formal perfection. This reasoning was characteristic of the Renaissance and was the base of the architectural theory of the age.
The plan of the Fort consists of a central court with bastions in the four corners and a rectangular gun platform facing the sea. It included basic facilities such as chapel, cistern, well and Captain's house all covering an area of about two acres. All these except the cistern and the L-shaped building in S. Matias were destroyed in the course of the 19th Century and are now survived by ruins. The Fort has one main gate and two other passages facing the sea. The two passages were later blocked; however, in 2001 one of the passages was opened up to allow storm water to drain out of the Fort. A heavy metal grill was fitted across the passage for security where it opens out onto the outwork. Other features include parapet walks, firing steps, watchtowers and gun ports. There were barracks rooms on the north and south sides and guardrooms leading back from the main gate. The re-entrant angles of the two landward bastions in which cannons were placed to sweep the face of the opposite bastion stand out clearly.

The flanks of the landward bastions, S. Filipe (north) and S. Alberto (south), are made with deep re-entrant angles where they face each other to provide screened gun positions. The other flanks and the landward flanks of the seaward bastions, S. Matias (north) and S. Mateus (south) are square without re-entrant angles. The flanks of these bastions, S. Matias and S. Mateus are swept back to provide the widest possible field of the gunfire. The north and south faces of the rectangular projection are covered by the seaward bastions, but the main face, the east wall, was protected only by the guns of the outwork in front of it.

The Main Gate is in the lee of S. Matias, covered by the eastern flank of S. Filipe, and was reached by a wooden gangway (now filled with sand to create a bridge) across the ditch. Above it is the gatehouse, consisting of an upper and lower room. There were two subsidiary gates in the east wall of the projection (one is now blocked), reached from the central court by a sloping passage of the Arches and by a flight of the steps (the Passage of the Steps) and a third in the eastern wall of S. Mateus (which is also blocked).

The original defence on the landward sides consists of a 4.27 metres thick wall, comprising a parapet nearly 2.75 metres wide and 1 metre high, backed by a parapet walk and firing step. Later, walls were built on top of the old parapets so that the height was increased by 3 metres. The lower parts of the defences are made of solid coral cut back to the line of the walls, but more pronounced on the western side.

A dry moat surrounds three sides of the Fort which was necessitated by the dangerously rising slope of the ground beyond S. Filipe and S. Alberto. The height of the scarp is about 17 metres including the moat which is about 5 metres deep and 5 metres wide and surrounds the fortress on the landward sides. The Fort is a good ideal above sea level to allow greater protection during a retreat.

The original materials used in the construction of the Fort are coral, lime, sand and clay. The facades were finished with a pigmented yellow ochre plaster. It has managed to retain much of its features since its construction in the 16th century.

Figure 2. A 1950 aerial photo showing the various features of Fort Jesus, Mombasa.

2.0. CURRENT USE

During the colonial period the Fort was converted into an administrative centre and later on into a prison. Additional buildings to serve this purpose were constructed inside the fort. These included the kitchen and a hangman's drop that was made against the re-entrant angle. Later a site museum, Conservation laboratory and an administration block were built on the old foundations of the barracks on the south eastern side of the central courtyard while on the north western part of the courtyard an ablution block was added.

Fort Jesus was officially opened to the public in 1980 and is currently both a Monument and Museum, attracting hundreds of thousands of both local and foreign tourists annually. It also serves as the Regional Headquarters for Coastal Museums and Sites.

In addition it is a popular site for social functions such as, wedding ceremonies, meetings, festivals and is host to a sound and light show. Further, the immediate surroundings of the Fort are used by the Mombasa community for relaxation, sport, formal and informal trade. The moat on the North West is currently used as a car park parking area for visitors to the Fort, while the moat on the West and South side is being landscaped with carpet grass with a tour trail to guide visitors around the Fort.
3.0. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

The East African Coast between Somalia and Mozambique has for centuries been inhabited by people of various backgrounds. Most of the Bantu speaking groups arrived in the area between A.D. 500 and 800 having come from the south. By about A.D. 1000, they had been joined by Arabs who came from Asia to settle along the coastal areas of East Africa. Independent city states such as Lamu, Mombasa, Malindi, Pemba, Kilwa and Zanzibar flourished along the coast. These coastal settlements traded in gold, silk, ivory and skins with traders from as far as Persia, Arabia, Syria, India and even China. Some of the settlements grew more powerful than others.

The difference in wealth, and the resultant competition for control of the trade led to rivalries and even wars. For a long time Kilwa was the most important and most prosperous settlement on the coast. However, by 1490, its prosperity had begun to decline and was slowly giving way to Mombasa. Mombasa was founded about the same time with a rival settlement of Malindi, further north and prosperity of Mombasa brought fierce rivalries between it and city states including Malindi, Lamu and Pate.

3.1. Building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa.

From the first half of the 2nd Millennium, A.D. the Portuguese had developed navigational facilities that would take them to the world's high seas. Portugal, which had been interested in finding a sea route to the East Indies, made the first successful attempt at the end of the 15th Century. A Portuguese sailor, Vasco da Gama passed through the Cape of Good Hope in 1497, reaching India in 1498. En route he passed through a number of ports and towns in Mozambique, Tanzania, Kenya and Somalia. Vasco da Gama, found most of these towns divided. He, however, noted their prosperous and commercial life; good harbours where merchant ships to India could refuel. During this first journey, he was received with mixed reactions with some ports welcoming him and others not. For instance, while Mombasa was hostile towards the Portuguese, Malindi on the other hand welcomed them and became their initial base on the East African coast.

However, before the coming of the Portuguese a number of foreigners had entrenched themselves at the coast and were actively involved with the local people in the trans-Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese had to break into the market and compete with these already established groups such as the Omani Arabs. This involved confrontations and ruthless takeovers of towns such as Mombasa and Kilwa that offered open resentment and unwillingness to pay tribute to Portugal. By 1509, the Portuguese had managed to take control of the area between Sofala, in Mozambique in the south and Socatra in the northern part of the East African coast.

In 1585, Turkey began taking interest on the coast, plundering and forcing various settlements to come under her control. Ali Bey, a Turkish pirate built a fort in Mombasa facing the Indian Ocean, and called it Ras Serani and began conspiring with the local people to drive the Portuguese out of Mombasa.

In order to consolidate their hold on the coast, the Portuguese Captain to the Coast, Mateus Mendes da Vasconcelos, then based at Malindi, was instructed to take his fleet to Mombasa and build a fortress. Initially Portuguese recaptured Ras Serani Fort reestablished it and renamed it Fort St. Joseph but this was not strategically positioned in relation to the harbour. Therefore in 1593, the Portuguese began to build a fortress in Mombasa at its present location that was to be called Fort Jesus, Mombasa. Fort Jesus, Mombasa became the new Portuguese Headquarters on the East African Coast and had a permanent garrison of a hundred soldiers. Other supporting forts of less magnitude were built on the island of Mombasa. Ruins of some of them are still visible around Mama Ngina Drive Heritage Site located about 1.5 kilometres south of the Fort and Makupa 3 kilometres to the west.

The building of Fort Jesus, Mombasa attracted Portuguese settlers and traders in large numbers never witnessed before in the region. Fort Jesus, Mombasa therefore bears testimony to the first successful attempt by Western civilization to stamp its authority on an area that had remained under trade influence of the East over several millennia. Towards the end of the 17th century English and Dutch joined the competition for control of the Indian Ocean trade. The Portuguese with limited men and ships began to find it impossible to keep a check on their Arab and Turkish enemies while at the same time having to watch for rival English and Dutch ships.

Taking advantage of declining Portuguese control, the Omani Arabs began to raid the Portuguese possessions on the East African Coast, beginning in 1652. By 1678, Fort Jesus, Mombasa was the only remaining stronghold of Portuguese power on the northern part of the East African Coast. The Portuguese were finally expelled from the Fort in December 1698 by the Omanis after a 33-month siege. The siege is known in history as the most remarkable event during the long Portuguese occupation of the East African Coast displaying the bravery of the Captain and his men during many months of bombardment, hunger and plague. Despite repeated attempts to recapture it, it was not until 1728 that the Portuguese managed to re-occupy it but only for 18 months.

The defeat of the Portuguese left the Omani Arabs in charge of the coastal settlements until the area was colonized by the British in 1885. Once under British rule, the fort was used as a prison until 1958 when it was declared a National Park, subsequently becoming a national monument and a museum. It still serves this function to date.
6.0. MANAGEMENT AND RESOURCES

Fort Jesus is managed by a Chief Curator, who is responsible for the day-to-day running of the site and reports directly to the Assistant Director, Museums Sites and Monuments, Coast. The Chief Curator is also accountable to the Director Regional Museums Sites and Monuments and the Director General.

Under the Chief Curator are heads of departments namely, Public Programmes, Collections, Administration, Finance and Sites. Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office (MOTCO), Coastal Archaeology, Coastal Sites and Monuments, Swahili Cultural Centre and CHEDA are accountable to the Chief Curator on administrative matters only and to the Assistant Director or the relevant Line Directors for professional and technical issues.

The Chief Curator also manages some sites mostly along the South coast which depend to some extent, on income generated from Fort Jesus.

The staff strength of the Fort consists of 104 employees, some of whom are permanent staff who carry out various activities. Within these staff members there are seven professionals and eleven technical staff, with expertise in archeology, conservation, archaelogy, museology, and management. The other staffs are engaged in maintenance of the Fort.

Decision-making and operational activities including retention of revenue generated is to some extent decentralized with the Fort maintaining its own private bank account; however, major decisions still remain centralized at headquarters in Nairobi.

The Fort, as part of NMK receives an annual grant from government to cover salaries and to meet other operational costs, including limited site conservation works. These funds are however, far inadequate to even meet major conservation activities. Most major conservation activities that have so far taken place at the Fort have been financed by donor funds. The site also raises a substantial amount of money annually which it sometimes uses to carry out minor site maintenance works.
5.1. Organogram of Fort Jesus, Mombasa

```
  Director General
  /               /
Director Regional Museums Sites & Monuments
 /                 /
Assistant Director Coast
                       /
Personal Assistant

Fort Jesus Museum Chief Curator
Personal Auditor

Collections Public Programmes Administration Finance Sites

Figure 3. Fort Jesus organisational administrative structure

6.0. STATE OF CONSERVATION

6.1. History of Conservation

- The actual construction of Fort Jesus started in 1593.

- Following recommendations from Goa, several improvements were made between 1634 and 1639. These improvements included; construction work on the landward side, filling gaps between S. Alberto and S. Filipé and the west curtain wall, extending the west face of S. Matias and construction of an outer gate to lead to the outer gate through a covered passage. The floors of the three bastions of S. Alberto, S. Filipé and S. Matias were also raised with a filling of coral chips and red earth to the level of the old parapets, and new walls with 1.22 metres wide gun-ports were built on top of them in S. Alberto and S. Matias. Other improvements included the construction of another platform on the landward side with two gun-ports covering the east face of S. Alberto and the south curtain wall and angel towers at the junction of the rectangular projection and the seaward bastions. Two cavaliers were also constructed in the landward bastions to cover the approaches from Kilindini and from Makupa, the ford of the Zimba.

- After the damages caused by the Great Siege of 1696 – 1698 the Omani Arabs who took over the Fort undertook various repairs and improvements. The area occupied by the outer rooms was filled to the level of the top of the Portuguese walls to make a broad platform, protected by musket slits and gun ports, while the door leading through a guardroom to the main court was blocked.

- From 1895 – 1958, the Fort was used as a prison where most sections were used as barracks and accommodation for the Provincial Medical Officer and other government officials. The noticeable improvements that were made during this period were the construction of the hangman’s drop and the kitchen house.

- In 1958 Fort Jesus was declared a historical monument by the colonial government of Kenya. In the same year with funding from the Gulbenkian Cabral Foundation of Portugal restoration of Fort Jesus as a historical monument was carried out and in 1960 a building to house a museum was built inside the Fort and was then opened to the public as a historic monument.

- In 1976, three coronaries were moved to the battlements of the seaward projection and mounted in the gun points overlooking the harbour. Explanatory notices in English and Kiswahili (the local language) were placed near the guns giving an account of caronade and their uses; together with pictures of grape and canister shot such as might have been fired. External landscaping works at the entrance to the Fort were also undertaken. These works included concrete block paving of the entrance and construction of a protective “chain” fence. In the same year a major underwater excavation in the shallows of Mombasa Harbour, below Fort Jesus, Mombasa to establish an identity of a wreck known to have existed, was sponsored by the Government of Kenya, the National Geographic Society, the Gulbenkian Foundation, the Institute of Nautical Archaeology and Western Maritime Museum of Australia.

- Following another excavation with funding from the Omani Government one of the houses, now known as the Omani House on the Northwest corner of the Fort
was restored, and a permanent exhibition with assemblage of artifacts depicting the culture and traditions of the Omani people was opened to the public. In 1992, the area in front of the museum within Fort Jesus, Mombasa was landscaped.

- In 1993, Fort Jesus celebrated 400 years of existence. Donations from individuals both nationwide and worldwide made it possible to upgrade a number of areas in the Fort, including display and presentation of the Fort as a historical monument and paved the path approach towards the entrance gate of the Fort.

- In 2000, the National Museums of Kenya with a grant from the Gulbenkian Foundation of Portugal restored the exterior ramparts of the Fort landscaped the surrounding moat so that tours around the Fort could be introduced for visitors to appreciate the massive walls structure and the relationship with their setting and also for installation of external lighting.

6.2. Condition Survey

As part of the management planning the site was surveyed to assess the pathology of the building and site. Generally, the perimeter walls of the Fort are well preserved in their original state and height. The walls stand on a hard fossil coral reaching a height of more than 17 metres. The buildings inside the Fort built by the Portuguese are survived by clear remains of wall foundations and are well preserved and documented. Those buildings that were built later by the Omanis and during the British occupation are still standing. The Moat that surrounds the Fort is still in its original state and a lot of landscaping work is being undertaken to improve its presentation (see its condition, before 2008 and after).

However, there are environmental factors that affect the Fort; the most irritating one is the air that is loaded with salt lashing at the walls of the Fort. This creates the effects of both efflorescence and sub-florescence, the later being extremely damaging to the wall plaster and requires regular monitoring and maintenance. The other one is the global environmental changes that have increased the sea level. The effects of this change in the sea level have been that the tidal currents have started to undermine the coral that forms the base of the Fort. This is a serious threat; which require immediate attention as with time it might affect the fabric of the building.

Figure 5. Effects of the tidal currents to the coral that forms the base of the Fort

7.0. INTERPRETATION AND PRESENTATION

In 1958, the fort was declared a national park on account of its historical importance. The then colonial government realizing its educational and potential to attract visitors decided to develop the site for the enjoyment of the public. Major excavations within the inside of the fort were carried out between 1958 and 1969 to recover archaeological materials for both study and interpretation. At the same time, as part of site development, a number of works were carried out. These included building a museum on the foundation of a collapsed Portuguese barracks, creating a curator’s house and constructing an ablution block. Once these works were completed the fort was opened to the public in 1962.

7.1. Presentation

Access to Fort Jesus is mainly by a terraced all weather road connected to the rest of the road network of Mombasa town. Ample car parking space is available. An access bridge and paved way leading from the car park into the inside of the Fort is used both for deliveries and by visitors.
Once inside, the visitor is first attended to from a ticket office adjacent to a cafeteria and not far away from the entrance, before being guided through the fort. Self-guided tours are also allowed.

Fort Jesus is presented as a whole (see ground plan for more details). The site display includes, the bastions, passage of the arches, ammunition store, barracks and chapel (now at ground level), Portuguese and British cannons and Portuguese paintings. A museum located within the fort houses an exhibition of the artifacts recovered from the Fort and the various coastal areas of Kenya.

A soft drinks shop and a craft shop are housed in the former prison offices and kitchen respectively. The drinks shop sells a variety of soft drinks whilst the craft shops sell souvenirs. Separate toilets for male and female are available within the fort and are clearly sign posted. The entrance to the Fort serves as the exit as well.

7.2. Interpretation

As observed by Michael Haynes (2001), the free leaflet gives a brief description of how the fort began its existence, and a list of key dates in its history; the guidebook provides a deeper knowledge about the site, and is an attempt to describe various sections of the fort. Details concerning the salvage and conservation of the Santo Antonio de Tama are also given.

Labeling signage is provided through small green signs situated on key parts of the Fort such as the panels at the Main Gate give a translation of Portuguese carvings and the Omani House, English and Swahili translation. There are also two notices in the main entrance showing the chronology of the Fort.

Descriptive text notices are displayed in the seven key areas, they include: Four cannonades in the East Wall, and the Museum arcade. There are two types of guides presently available at the Fort. One type of guide is brought in externally from the Fort, either hired from outside or brought in as a tour leader. The other type is available from the education office.

There is also a reconstruction within the Omani House, a receiving room the Sultan would receive his guests, complemented by displays of associated Omani artifacts within the house.

7.3. Presentation and Interpretation Problems

Attempts have been made to interpret the Fort to visitors, as part of the history of the Kenyan coast. However, the way the Fort and its related military landscape have been presented does not communicate the complexity of its history, or attempt to unravel the many layers of historical events to the public nor presented to tell the story why the Fort was built where it stands and how it was built. Tours are concentrated in the inside of

the Fort and not around the Meat though the outside is quite impressive but looks rather "dead".

The evaluation revealed that Fort Jesus does not have enough signage outside to inform visitors of the location and direction. The kitchen, built during British occupation and one of the important historical features within the Fort has no signage on it, and those that have, like the ones found at places such as the passage of the Arches and Ammunition store are too brief and hardly tells the visitors much.

The way the cannons were positioned does not reflect the historical development of the Fort in that tours begin with British cannons before seeing Portuguese ones and are inappropriately placed as they point to unlikely targets such as the Captain's house and the Old Town of Mombasa.

It was also observed that the map showing the location of Fort Jesus and the model of the fort are inappropriately located. This is because visitors need to access this information before or at the beginning of the site tour. Instead this information is found half way through the tour.

Exhibition spaces have assumed the roles of galleries in which other matters not related to the history of the Fort and its envnor are exhibited. An example of this is the exhibition on the ethnographic exhibition on the Mijikenda. This creates a cognitive interruption for visitors, as their expectation and information gathered during most of the tour is related to the Fort and its history.

A few inaccuracies in the information provided by the tour guide were also noticed. These included the size of the island (given as 15 sq. km), purpose of building the fort given as protection of Portuguese future sailors, and that most around the fort was constructed for storing water.

Sitting facilities for visitors to relax on are not available and alternatively visitors tend to make use of the parapet walls when they need to relax.

8.0. SYNTHESIS

Statement of Significance

Fort Jesus is one of the most significant sites on the Kenyan Coast. Built in the Mombasa Old Town in 1593, it is one of the best surviving examples of 16th century Portuguese military architecture in the world. Throughout history, the Fort has been at the center of hostilities between various conflicting interests; Portuguese versus Arabs versus Swahili versus British. It still bears scars from each of these eras.

The Fort is also an important historical landmark in the colonial history of Kenya. The Portuguese and later the Arabs used it as a stronghold to safeguard their interests on the East African coast and the East trade. The British, however, coming at a time when
they were establishing their hegemony over most of Africa used it as a prison, making it a symbol of British authority over the area.

The various conflicting Swahili factions fought for the control of the Fort in order to re-establish their control of the East African Coast. To them therefore, the Fort is a memento to the struggle for self-determination. In the Swahili Old town of Mombasa, the Fort with its massive walls is a landmark of social cohesion given a long history of political struggles.

8.1. Values

8.1.1. Historical values:

Firstly, it has had a long history of hostilities of the interested parties (Portuguese, Arabs, Swahili and the British) making it the early Fort in Africa, which has experienced such turbulence.

Secondly, the Fort is now an important historical landmark on the East Africa region as it served as the Portuguese base/headquarters through which they maintained their occupation on the region.

Lastly, on both national and local level, the Fort serves as a symbol of a long history of colonial occupation.

8.1.2. Architectural values:

Fort Jesus is an architectural landmark in the Old Town as it was built on coral rock with massive walls and other strong elements. It is one of the best examples in the world, of the 16th century Portuguese military architecture.

8.1.3. Educational values:

Fort Jesus possesses both educational and research values. It is studied and visited by schools from within Kenya and receives a number of students and scholars from around the world.

8.1.4. Social values:

The Fort serves as a venue for social functions such as wedding ceremonies, meetings, night shows and other social gatherings.

8.1.5. Economic values:

There are many organizations and individuals dependent on the Fort for income. These include NMK, Tour Operators, Tour Guides, local hotels, taxi operators, formal traders

9.0. SWOT ANALYSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strengths</th>
<th>Weaknesses</th>
<th>Opportunities</th>
<th>Threats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Generates income</td>
<td>- Lack of marketing plan</td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Kenya Tourism Board (KTB)</td>
<td>- Declining Central Government funding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Major income earner for NMK</td>
<td>- Advertising through various media e.g. hotels, brochures, tour operators, internet, etc.</td>
<td>- Co-ordination with Mombasa and Coast Tourism Association</td>
<td>- Low seasonal visitation (e.g. during rainy seasons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Donor funding</td>
<td>- Inscription on the WHL</td>
<td>- Co-operation with Coast Development Authority</td>
<td>- Competition from nearby tourist sites e.g. Zanzibar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- High quality funds</td>
<td>- Site internationally known</td>
<td>- Co-operation with Friends of Fort Jesus</td>
<td>- Decline in tourist industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Part of generated funds sustains other sites e.g. Jumba</td>
<td>- Possibility of establishing marketing department</td>
<td>- Tour guides speak different foreign languages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Generated money sustains other NMK activities</td>
<td>- Sound and Light shows at Fort Jesus and advertised on international flights</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tourism:

- One of the major tourist attractions in Mombasa |
- Most visited cultural site in Kenya |
- Spectacular scenery |
- Local public attraction |
- Tour Guides identify themselves with Fort Jesus |
- Fort Jesus within tourist circuit |
- Availability of local tourist market |
- Increase in visitors (local and foreign) |
- Co-operation with tour operators |
- Availability of tourism training colleges |
- Existence of tourist police unit |
- Direct flights to Mombasa |
- Good tourism infrastructure |
- Tour guides speak different foreign languages

Promotion:

- Strategic location |
- Long opening hours throughout the year |
- Easy accessibility |
- Fort on the internet |
- Time-to-time promotion undertaken |
- Existence of Friends of Fort Jesus (e.g.
- Limited budget |
- Draw on in-house expertise |
- Staff exodus |
10.0. GUIDING PRINCIPLES

Fort Jesus is the best-known surviving example of 16th century Portuguese military architecture. Constructed in 1593 to safeguard both Portuguese possessions on East African coast and the East trade, the Fort has been at the centre of conflicts between rival colonial powers of its history. To this end it bears scars from each of its successive masters.

Given its long and enduring history, the Fort and its immediate surroundings deserve to be protected in total for the enjoyment of both present and future generations. However, there is a need to establish synergies between presentation efforts and the site itself so as to better provide visitors with an experience of the past thereby revealing its full cultural significance. In order to achieve these, the following are hereby proposed:

- The presentation and interpretation of Fort Jesus should re-contextualize the monument and its associated landscape and structures, as an embodiment of Kenya’s specific place in the history of the human struggle against domination, quest for economic supremacy and the complex human relations that resulted from that.
- Adopt partnership and transparency in the management and monitoring of activities to encourage all willing parties to confidently contribute to positive changes.
- Ensure the conservation of the site through regular scheduled inspection and maintenance.
- Re-structure and streamline the existing management system in order to have a clear reporting and conservation mechanism on the site.
- Develop and implement a comprehensive and aggressive marketing plan to properly promote the site to both local and international markets.
- Improve the visitor experience through thematic and thematic displays.
- Identify and develop programmes that generate revenue for conservation and gradual maintenance.
- Undertake fundraising activities in partnership with communities for the conservation and development of the site
- Maintain a highly motivated workforce through regular reviews of conditions of service.

11.0. STRATEGIC PLAN

11.1. Management

Given the weakness and threats observed from discussions with both staff and stakeholders, it can be concluded that some of the key challenges are to respond to the demands and needs of customers. This will require establishing appropriate structures, developing adequate capacity and improving management and coordination for efficient delivery of services.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Management</td>
<td>- Review the draft management plan done September 2001 by Africa 2009 participants. - Mobilize stakeholder’s participation. - Conduct periodic staff appraisals. - Conduct regular reviews of staff condition of service. - Encourage monthly staff meetings. - Implement the NMR organizational structure and establish a reporting mechanism.</td>
<td>- Draw up a site presentation and interpretation plan. - Improve participatory management system. - Nominate site for World Heritage Listing. - Training of Tour Guides. - Staff training.</td>
<td>- Evaluation and Monitoring. - Attract and maintain highly motivated staff.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.2. Establishing Sustainable Funding System

There is also a need to rework key functional areas of conservation, interpretation and presentation, research, marketing and infrastructure to be able to respond to the changing environment and meet the expectations of the customers. Other areas that need to be pursued include fundraising, revenue and donor support. Presently, the Government of Kenya covers about 40-50% of total NMK costs, which is about Kshs. 28 million each month, and revenue covers about 20% and the rest from donors to various projects. The main focus here will be on the locally generated funding which would be more sustainable in the long run.

The Fort has high prospects of generating more income by way of increasing and diversifying its income base. Diversified activities could include selling of indigenous crafts and foodstuffs from within the fort. The museum has an option to hire out the café to an independent contractor so as to improve the quality of services. The sound and light show needs to be advertised and viewed by a larger audience than is currently the case. There is need to construct descent stalls for the vendors operating from within the museum premises and collect rent from such activities. Hawkers trading on museum grounds also should be levied.

Collaboration with development partners and stakeholders on the way forward on financing and implementation will be strengthened.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Establish a Sustainable Funding System</td>
<td>- Create a financial/accounting system. - Set up a fund raising committee. - Draw terms of reference. - Draw a fund raising programme. - Prepare project proposals for funding. - Expand income generating activities in and around the Fort.</td>
<td>- Carry out fund raising activities. - Hold regular meetings. - Publicize fund raising programme. - Hold stakeholder report back meetings.</td>
<td>- Increase and maintain donor funding. - Distribute funding to other sites.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.3. Site Presentation and Interpretation

Though the fort is the second most visited site in Kenya, its presentation and interpretation is in dire need of improvement. The current presentation lacks a clear trail and hardly gives a visitor a full experience of fort life. In addition, the fort lacks in thematic presentations.

The Fort is currently faced with the problem of museum visit. The current museum despite being located at the center of the fort also houses collections alien to the Fort and whose interpretation does not fit in the story of the Fort. Interpretation facilities are inadequate and the site does not have a visitor center. There will be need to assess the presentation and interpretation needs of the site followed by preparation of a presentation and interpretation plan, which will have to be implemented in the medium term.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Site Presentation and Interpretation | - Carry out site presentation and interpretation needs  
- Draw site presentation and interpretation plan | - Lay out tourist trails 
- Improve site interpretative signage 
- Co-ordinate tour guides 
- Upgrade visitor facilities | - Develop visitor facilities |

11.4 Conservation Works

The site is generally in good condition, especially after the recent restoration works carried out on the exterior walls. Site pathological studies revealed that some areas of the Fort including restored ones are fast degrading and the effects of the change of sea levels due to global environmental charges have also started to undermine the coral that forms the base of the Fort. There will be need to urgently draw up rehabilitation and restoration plans that will address the problems observed. A maintenance plan also needs to be drawn and implemented for the regular maintenance of the site.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conservation Works</td>
<td>- Draw up a rehabilitation/restoration plan</td>
<td>- Prepare project proposals including budget estimates for conservation works</td>
<td>- Regular inspection and maintenance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.5. Promotion and Tourism

Though the fort is a "must see site" for visitors to Mombasa, there is currently no marketing strategy by NMK. Many hotels lack information about the Fort on their information desks. The site, however, is on internet and there are individual efforts by a number of operators to market the Fort. These include those by the operators of the tower and light show. The Fort also is affected by general downward trends in the tourist market necessitated by negative publicity.

There will, therefore, be need to draw and implement a vigorous marketing strategy and to establish cooperative links with various tour operators and airlines for the purpose of attracting more visitors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tourism and Promotion           | - Establish cooperative links with tour agencies 
- Draw up a marketing plan 
- Set up a marketing/tourism committee | - Produce and erect signage 
- Production of brochures, newsletters and magazines 
- Launch promotional materials 
- Distribute promotional materials 
- Organize and carry put talk shows 
- Carry out drama performances | - Update website 
- Increase site publicity through continuous distribution of more publicized materials |

11.6. Education and Research

The Fort receives good patronage from schools, colleges. It also attracts a sizeable number of researchers from Universities within and outside Kenya. Though the Fort has an education department, its operations are hampered by logistical problems such as lack of transport. In addition, its audiovisual equipment is constantly broken between PMDA and the Museum, thereby hampering the department's operations. A number of areas have also not been researched. Among them are topics related to the daily past life inside the Fort and the Forts' relationship with the Old Town Community. The department needs to come up with education and research programmes to address some of the problems mentioned.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Short term</th>
<th>Medium term</th>
<th>Long term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Education and Research</td>
<td>- Identify areas for further research</td>
<td>- Conduct workshops for teachers</td>
<td>- Implement out-reach programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Design out-reach programmes</td>
<td>- Increase public education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Identify education needs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Draw up educational programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


While a number of conservation and management issues were raised in 2001 most of them have been addressed. At the National level a whole Directorate of Development and Corporate Affairs has been established and has been working to develop an institutional marketing and development strategy for National Museums of Kenya. This will be concluded soon ready for implementation.

At the local level, two workshops were organized that gathered tourist guides, representatives from the Ministry of Tourism and the Tourist Police to discuss areas that required improvement to satisfy visitor needs.

Tour guiding trails are being established starting around the Fort. Sitting benches will be provided at some places along the trails.

However, the weightiest issues that this revised plan focus affecting both the conservation and management of the site and demands immediate attention are: the effects of both sub-fluorescence and efflorescence to the wall rendering of the Fort caused by salty air, erosion of the coral that forms the base of Fort Outwork caused bydy changes in the tidal currents aggressively undermining its stability, and the exhibition, presentation and interpretation of the Fort.

Regular activities to be implemented:

Management

Establish sustainable Funding system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short Term 2010-2011</th>
<th>Long Term 2010-2014</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Review of the 2006 - 2010 Management plan</td>
<td>- Evaluation and monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Maintain highly motivated staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Set up a fund raising committee</td>
<td>- Increase and maintain donor funding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Draw terms of reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Prepare project proposals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Site Presentation and Interpretation

- Implement site interpretation Plan

Conservation works

- Implement the site Maintenance Plan

Tourism promotion

- Enhance links with tour agents
- Draw up a marketing plan
- Set up a marketing committee
- Set up a website

- Improve visitor facilities
- Improve site interpretative signage
- Layout tourist trails
- Regular inspection and maintenance
- Continuous updating of a website
- Increase site publicity through continuous distribution of publicity materials and merchandise.

13.0 Monitoring and Evaluation

The implementation of this plan is subject to constant monitoring of all activities implemented. This will be for the purpose of noting progress according to schedules and problems of implementation.

This plan will be subject to periodic evaluations every five years.
LIST OF STAKEHOLDERS

- National Museum of Kenya (NMK)
- Friends of Fort Jesus
- Wamij Foundation
- Programme for Museum Development in Africa
- Kishesho
- Ndiakuu kibokoni
- Chief Old Town
- Tour guides
- District Development Officer
- Coast Development Authority
- Mombasa Municipal Council (Town Planner and Environment, Health and Sanitary Officer)
- Swahili Cultural Centre
- Fort Jesus Museum Board
- Pambano Football Club
- Provincial Physical Planning Officer
- District Development Officer
- Mombasa and Coast Tourist Association
- Kenya Association of Tour Operators
- Taxi Drivers
REFERENCES


Jowell, Johan H. A. "Mombasa the Friendly Town" Nairobi Printing and Packaging Corporation Ltd. 1976.


FORT JESUS National Monument

VISITORS’ QUESTIONNAIRE

Dear Visitor,

This questionnaire intends to assist us prepare management plan for Fort Jesus national monument. We thank you for filling it and wish you a nice stay in Mombasa.

How did you known about the Fort Jesus?

Magazine ☐ Tourist Guide ☐ From a friend or other visitors ☐ Travel agency ☐ Web site ☐ In your Hotel accommodation ☐

What was the main reason of your visit to the site?

☐ Cultural Tourism ☐ Visiting a national monument ☐ Recreation ☐ Part of a tour ☐ Just passing through ☐

Does the site correspond to what you imagined?

Yes ☐ No ☐ If no why ..................................................

Access to the site and presentation:

What do you think about Visitors facilities? ☐ Insufficient ☐ medium ☐ Good ☐

What do you think about Information panels on site? ☐ Insufficient ☐ medium ☐ Good ☐

Which part of the Fort Excited you most? ☐ bastions ☐ captain’s house ☐ burial ☐ museum ☐ walls ☐

What do you think about the site conservation and cleanliness?

Very poor ☐ poor ☐ OK ☐ good ☐ excellent ☐

What services are missing most (2 choices maximum)

Drinking ☐ Race ☐ Live traditional ceremonies ☐ book shop ☐ interpretation centre ☐ Curios ☐

Was our staff welcoming/informative?

☐ ☐ ☐
At the shops and the reception:
   Poor □  Satisfactory □  Good □
During the guided visit:
   Poor □  Satisfactory □  Good □

What do you think about the entrance fee?
   Cheap □  Affordable □  Expensive □

Are you ready to...
   ... come again □  Yes □  No □
   ... recommend the site to friends □  Yes □  No □

Other remarks / comments... or suggestions:
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
The Culture Sector

H. E. Dr. Mary M. Kimulu
Ambassador
Permanent Delegate of Kenya to
UNESCO
UNESCO House

Ref.: CLT/WHC/74/KEN/Nom/11/AFR 29 July 2011

Subject: Inscription of Fort Jesus, Mombasa (C 1295rev) Kenya, on the World Heritage List

Madam,

I have the pleasure to inform you that the World Heritage Committee, at its 35th session (UNESCO, 19 – 29 June 2011), examined the nomination of the Fort Jesus, Mombasa and decided to inscribe the property on the World Heritage List. The decision of the Committee concerning the inscription is attached below.

I am confident that your Government will take the necessary measures for the proper conservation of this new World Heritage property. The World Heritage Committee and its Secretariat, the World Heritage Centre, will do everything possible to collaborate with you in these efforts.

The Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention (paragraph 168), request the Secretariat to send to each State Party with a newly inscribed property a map of the area(s) inscribed. Please examine the attached map and inform us of any discrepancies in the information by 1 December 2011.

The inscription of the property on the World Heritage List is an excellent opportunity to draw the attention of visitors to, and remind local residents of, the World Heritage Convention and the outstanding universal value of the property. To this effect, you may wish to place a plaque displaying the World Heritage and the UNESCO emblems at the property. You will find suggestions on this subject in the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention.

In many cases States Parties decide to hold a ceremony to commemorate the inscription of a property on the World Heritage List. Upon request to the World Heritage Centre by the State Party, a World Heritage Certificate can be prepared for such an occasion.

I would be grateful if you could provide me with the name, address, telephone and fax numbers and e-mail address of the person or institution responsible for the management of the property so that we may send them World Heritage publications.
Please find attached the brief descriptions of your site, prepared by ICOMOS and the World Heritage Centre, in both English and French. As these brief descriptions will be used in later publications, as well as on the World Heritage website, we would like to have your full concurrence with their wording. Please examine these descriptions and inform us, by 1 December 2011 at the latest, if there are changes that should be made. If we do not hear from you by this date, we will assume that you are in agreement with the text as prepared.

Furthermore, as you may know, the World Heritage Centre maintains a website at http://whc.unesco.org/, where standard information about each property on the World Heritage List can be found. Since we can only provide a limited amount of information about each property, we try to link our pages to those maintained by your World Heritage property or office, so as to provide the public with the most reliable and up-to-date information. If there is a website for the newly inscribed property, please send us its web address.

The full list of the Decisions adopted by the World Heritage Committee at its 35th session is available electronically at http://whc.unesco.org/en/sessions/35COM.

As you know, according to paragraph 172 of the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention, the World Heritage Committee invites the States Parties to the Convention to inform the Committee, through the World Heritage Centre, of their intention to undertake or to authorize in the area protected under the Convention major restorations or new constructions which may affect the outstanding universal value of the property.

May I take this opportunity to thank you for your co-operation and for your support in the implementation of the World Heritage Convention.

Please accept, Madam, the assurances of my highest consideration.

Kishore Rabo
Director
World Heritage Centre

cc: National Commission of Kenya for UNESCO
ICOMOS
UNESCO Office in Nairobi
National Museums of Kenya
Extract of the Decisions adopted by the 35th session of the World Heritage Committee (UNESCO, 2011)

Decision: 35 COM 8B.19

The World Heritage Committee,

1. Having examined Documents WHC-11/35.COM/8B.Add and WHC-11/35.COM/INF.8B1.Add,

2. Inscribes Fort Jesus, Mombasa, Kenya, on the World Heritage List on the basis of criteria (ii) and (iv);

3. Takes note of the following provisional statement of Outstanding Universal Value:

Brief synthesis
Built by the Portuguese at the end of the 16th century and used by them for over 100 years, Fort Jesus, Mombasa bears testimony to the first successful attempt by Western civilization to control the Indian Ocean trade routes which had remained under Eastern influence over several millennia. The design of the fort, with its imposing walls and five bastions, is based on the human body, and reflects the characteristics of Renaissance military architectural theory. The Fort also represents an exceptional symbol of the interchange of cultural values and influences between and among peoples of African, Arab, Turkish, Persian and European origin, whose lives have been touched by the presence and role of this imposing structure.

Criterion (ii): Built in a period and in a region which were at the centre of the emerging political, commercial, and cultural globalisation, Fort Jesus, with its imposing structure, is an exceptional witness to the interchange of cultural values among peoples of African, Arab, Turkish, Persian and European origin. Built and occupied first by the Portuguese, the Fort changed hands many times throughout its history, coming under Arab, Swahili and English control. It’s important role in the control of trade also saw it host many of the peoples of the Indian Ocean basin. Fort Jesus, Mombasa, also symbolizes the struggle for freedom, as it became a place for resistance for the local Swahili population against domination by any other power. The Fort is also a landmark of social cohesion as it is used by people of diverse cultures while still retaining the characteristics of its previous functions.

Criterion (iv): Fort Jesus, Mombasa is an outstanding, surviving 16th century Portuguese military fortification. It exemplified a new type of fortification that resulted from the innovations in military and weapons technology that occurred in the 15th and 16th centuries. In its layout and form, it reflected the Renaissance ideal that perfect proportions and geometric harmony are to be found in the proportions of the human body, while at the same time meeting the functional needs of a modern and well-defended fortification. No other fortress demonstrates a better relationship to the human body as the model for its layout. This layout, though simple, ensured the complete protection of the Fort and allowed it to survive almost unchanged over centuries of continued occupations and reoccupations. The Fort, in fact, marked a milestone in 16th century fortress design, and stood as a stronghold for the safeguard of Portuguese interests on the East African coast and along the trans-Indian Ocean trade. The successful design of Fort Jesus, Mombasa, led to the adoption of some of its strategic aspects to improve other forts in Africa.
Integrity
The boundaries of the property have been selected to ensure that the functional and visual integrity of Fort Jesus are retained. The boundaries have been delineated so as to include the underwater archaeological remains adjacent to Fort Jesus that are integral to its historical context, as well as the moat area adjacent to the Mombasa Old Town. The property is in good conditions and there is no urban or development encroachment in its immediate vicinity. Minor changes inside the Fort bear witness to its history and do not threaten its integrity.

Authenticity
In regard to authenticity, Fort Jesus, Mombasa, has retained its form, design and materials, with coral stone and lime mortar still being used in the traditional way, where necessary, for repair and conservation work. It has also retained its authenticity of setting, located on an otherwise unbuild property along the coast of Mombasa Island adjacent to the Mombasa Old Town with which it shares a common history.

Protection and management requirements
The legal protection and management system for the property are adequate. Fort Jesus, Mombasa, was originally designated a National Park in 1958. This designation protected the Fort and a 100-meter strip around it. Today it is protected under the National Museums and Heritage Act, 2006. A satisfactory management plan has been put in place for the property with the National Museums of Kenya acting as the key stakeholder in its conservation and safeguarding. Long-term conservation issues include protection of the Fort from urban encroachment and inappropriate design in the areas adjacent to the Fort and the surrounding Mombasa Old Town, control of erosion of the rocks along the sea coast, and the ongoing maintenance and conservation of the Fort itself.

4. Recommends that the State Party:
   a) Amend the designation notice so as to eliminate the discrepancy between the sizes of the conservation area and the buffer zone and/or ensure that the entirety of the buffer zone is protected so that the additional layer of protection to the property is effective,
   b) Develop a holistic management structure for Mombasa Old Town that involves all the stakeholders including the local community, the municipal council, and the mangers of the property, and ensure that the Mombasa Old Town Conservation Office has the necessary tools to ensure that the buffer zone effectively acts as an additional layer of protection to the property,
   c) Install markers to clearly identify the boundaries of the property and buffer zone, including its marine boundaries,
   d) Give the highest priority to rigorous monitoring and remedial action for the rock erosion,
   e) Also give priority to programmed maintenance over restoration, based on the 2009-2019 Maintenance Plan included in the Management Plan.
Surface and coordinates of the property inscribed on the World Heritage List by the 35th session of the World Heritage Committee (UNESCO, 2011) in accordance with the Operational Guidelines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State Party</th>
<th>ID N</th>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Buffer zone</th>
<th>Centre point coordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>1295</td>
<td>2.36 ha</td>
<td>31 ha</td>
<td>S4 3.46 E39.40.46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Brief Description in English

Fort Jesus, built by the Portuguese in 1593–1596 to the designs of Giovanni Battista Cairati to protect the port of Mombasa, is one of the most outstanding and well-preserved examples of 16th-century Portuguese military fortification and a landmark in the history of this type of construction. The fort's layout and form reflected the Renaissance ideal that perfect proportions and geometric harmony are to be found in the human body. The property covers an area of 2.36 ha and includes the fort's moat and immediate surroundings.

Brief Description in French

Le fort, édifié par les Portugais en 1593-1596 selon les plans de Giovanni Battista Cairati pour protéger le port de Mombasa, est l'un des exemples les plus remarquables et les mieux préservés de fortification militaire portugaise du XVIe siècle et une référence dans l'histoire de ce type de construction. Le schéma et la structure du fort reflètent l'idéal de la Renaissance selon lequel la perfection des proportions et l'harmonie géométrique doivent s'inspirer du corps humain. Le bien s'étend sur 2,36 ha et comprend les douves du fort et la zone immédiatement avoisinante.
Figure 3. Map of Fort Jesus, Mombasa and the Buffer Zone